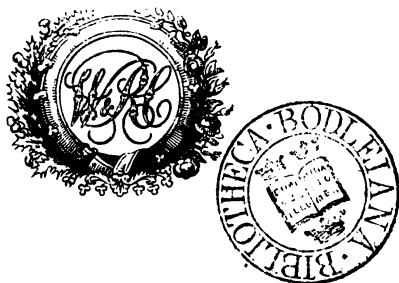


CHAMBERS'S EDUCATIONAL COURSE—CLASSICAL SECTION.
EDITED BY DRS SCHMITZ AND ZUMPT.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY DR LEONHARD SCHMITZ, F.R.S.E.,
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL, EDINBURGH.



EDINBURGH:
PUBLISHED BY WILLIAM AND ROBERT CHAMBERS.
1852.

30.5. f. 5.

EDINBURGH :
PRINTED BY W. AND R. CHAMBERS.

PREFACE.

THE Introductory Grammar of the Latin language here offered to the public, is essentially an abridgment of the Latin Grammar which forms part of the present series of Latin school-books, and is intended to be put into the hands of beginners, whose object is, in the first instance, to become acquainted only with the principal and leading features of the language. To those who wish to prosecute their studies further, it may serve as an introduction to the larger Grammar; while those learners who do not intend to enter more deeply into the study of the Latin language, will find in the present little work all that is essential for practical purposes. The work, therefore, claims a place among the Elementary Grammars commonly known under the name of Rudiments of the Latin Language; but it is hoped that it will be found to place the laws of the language before the learner in a more correct form than is done in many Rudiments which are still used in our schools, and in which incorrect statements, grammatical fictions, and unphilosophical definitions, are met with oftener than could be desired in books of which the substance is impressed upon the memory of the young, and which thus have a strong tendency to perpetuate error, and obstruct the progress of accurate knowledge.

As the book necessarily contains information on many points which the pupil may dispense with at the beginning of his career, but which, after having mastered the first elements, it will be useful and interesting to know, the parts which are thought more essential than others are printed in larger type, and are meant to be committed to memory. The parts printed in small type may at first be omitted; but after a little time, and especially when the pupil is revising what he had

learned before, they ought to form subjects of explanation and discussion for the teacher, so as to extend the knowledge of the pupil, and establish it on a rational basis.

The number of examples illustrating the various rules might easily have been made more numerous ; but as this Introductory Grammar is to be accompanied by a book of Exercises, beginning with the first elements of the language, it has been thought unnecessary to increase its size by such additions.

The rules of gender and quantity, which are generally treated of separately in elementary grammars, have been given in connection with the inflections, and certain general principles only are laid down in separate sections at the beginning of the work, because without some general rules of this kind the beginner will not be able even to read and pronounce a Latin word or proposition correctly.

L. S.

EDINBURGH, *December* 1851.

CONTENTS.

	Page
ALPHABET AND ORTHOGRAPHY,	1
QUANTITY AND ACCENTUATION OF SYLLABLES,	2
CLASSES OF WORDS, OR PARTS OF SPEECH,	3
THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ITS GENDERS,	4
DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES,	5
CASE,	5
NUMBER,	6
FIRST DECLENSION,	7
SECOND DECLENSION,	9
THIRD DECLENSION,	12
PECULIAR FORMATION OF CERTAIN CASES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION,	22
FOURTH DECLENSION,	24
FIFTH DECLENSION,	25
PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION—DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR DECLENSION,	26
TERMINATIONS AND DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES,	31
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES,	34
NUMERALS,	37
PRONOUNS,	43
THE VERB,	50
THE VERB <i>Esse</i> , TO BE,	56
THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS,	59
DEPONENT VERBS,	78
PECULIAR AND CONTRACTED FORMS OF CONJUGATION,	81
CONJUGATION BY PERIPHRAISIS OR CIRCUMLOCUTION,	82
VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE,	83
VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PER- FECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE,	85
VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE,	88
VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PER- FECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE,	95

	Page
IRREGULAR VERBS,	96
DEFECTIVE VERBS,	105
IMPERSONAL VERBS,	108
ADVERBS,	110
PREPOSITIONS,	111
CONJUNCTIONS,	112
INTERJECTIONS,	113
ETYMOLOGY IN GENERAL,	114
DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES FROM VERBS, SUBSTANTIVES, AND ADJECTIVES,	115
DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS, SUBSTANTIVES, AND PROPER NAMES,	117
DERIVATION OF VERBS FROM SUBSTANTIVES, ADJECTIVES, AND OTHER VERBS,	120
DERIVATION OF ADVERBS,	122
FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS,	123

SYNTAX.

RULES OF CONCORD BETWEEN SUBSTANTIVES AND WORDS WHICH QUALIFY THEM—APPOSITION,	125
AGREEMENT BETWEEN SUBJECT AND PREDICATE,	127
RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES,	130
USE OF THE DATIVE CASE,	133
USE OF THE GENITIVE CASE,	136
USE OF THE ABLATIVE CASE,	139
USE OF THE VOCATIVE CASE,	144
PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF ADJECTIVES,	145
DIFFERENT KINDS OF CLAUSES AND THEIR RELATIONS TO ONE ANOTHER,	146
MOODS IN GENERAL,	148
INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES,	148
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,	150
IMPERATIVE MOOD,	156
INFINITIVE MOOD,	156
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE,	157
SUPINE,	158
PARTICIPLES,	159

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

ALPHABET AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. THE Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters—namely, *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z*. Of these, six are vowels—*a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*; and the remaining seventeen are consonants.

In writing, the Romans represented the two sounds of *i* and *j* by *i* only; and those of *u* and *v* by *v* only.

2. There are five diphthongs—namely, *ae, oe, au, ei*, and *eu*.

Of these, the first three frequently occur; but *ei* is found only in a few interjections—such as *hei, eia, oiei*; and *eu* only in *heu, heus, eheu*; in *ceu, seu*, and *neu*; and in *neuter* and *neutiquam*. *Oi* is found only in *oiei*; and *ui* occurs only in the interjection *hui*, and in the datives *huic* and *cui*.

The consonants were probably pronounced uniformly by the Romans in every position. Accordingly, *c* was sounded as *k*, though we pronounce it as *s* before *e, i, y, ae*, and *oe*. In like manner *t* was pronounced as pure *t*, though we now pronounce it as *sh* when it precedes *i* followed by another vowel—as *justitia*, which we pronounce *jus-tish'-i-a*.

3. The consonants are divided into two classes—namely, mutes, *b, c, d, f, k, p, q, t, v*; and liquids, *l, m, n, r*. Besides these there are the guttural and the dental aspirates *h* and *s*; and the double consonants *x* and *z*; *x* being composed of *k, c*, or *g* and *s*, and *z* of *d* and *s*, yet it is pronounced as *s* soft.

Q occurs only before the vowel *u*, the two being pronounced as *kw*, though the Romans gave the combination the sound of *k* alone.

4. When a word ending with a vowel is immediately followed by another beginning with a vowel, there is felt an incon-

venience in pronunciation, which is called *hiatus*. To avoid this, in reading poetry, the final vowel sound is omitted.

Thus in verse, by *elision*, *Sapere aude* is pronounced *Saper' aude*; *Dardanidae e muris*, *Dardaniā' e muris*, &c.

The same elision takes place in poetry when the second word begins with a vowel or *h* and the first ends in *m*—thus *multum ille* is read *mult' ille*.

Capital letters, though generally employed by the Romans until a late period, are now used only as *initials*—1. In proper names, and adjectives derived from them; 2. At the beginning of a sentence; and 3. At the beginning of a verse.

When two vowels, which under ordinary circumstances form a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, the second is marked with *diaeresis* (¨)—as *poëta*, a poet; *æ'r*, air.

As a sign of punctuation, the Romans used the full stop only; but in modern editions of the Latin classics the same signs are employed as in our own language.

QUANTITY AND ACCENTUATION OF SYLLABLES.

5. A syllable may consist of a single vowel or a diphthong, or of a combination of one or more consonants with one vowel or diphthong—as *i*, go; *e-go*, I; *au-ster*, south-wind.

6. Syllables are either long or short, only a few being of a doubtful nature, or sometimes long and sometimes short.

The length of a syllable depends upon the vowel which it contains. A long syllable should be dwelt upon about twice as long as a short one; hence two short vowels when united in a diphthong make one long sound.

A long syllable is marked by a horizontal line (¯) above its vowel; a short syllable by an under-curve (˘); and a doubtful syllable by the union of these two (˘ˉ)—as *pēcūnĭā*, *homō*.

7. A syllable may be long by *nature* (that is, by the natural length of its vowel) or by *position* (that is, when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants.) Thus *sōl* and *trādīt* have *o* and *a* long by nature, while *fāx* and *amabūnt* have *a* and *u* long by position.

8. All syllables containing a diphthong or a vowel which has arisen from a contraction of two others are long—as *ādes*, a house; *laūs*, praise; *cōelum*, heaven; *cōgo* (contracted for *cōāgo*), I compel; *mālo* (for *māgēvōlo*), I will rather; *jūnior* (for *jūvēnior*), younger.

9. One vowel immediately followed by another in the same word is short—as *dēus*, a god; *pŭs*, dutiful.

The breathing *h* in such cases does not affect the length of a syllable—as *trāho*, I draw; *vĕho*, I drive.

10. The vowels of radical syllables retain their natural quantity in derivative and compound words, even when the radical vowel is changed into another—as *māter*, *māternus*; *pāter*, *pāternus*; *āmo*, *āmor*, *āmicus*, *āmicitia*, *inīmicitia*; *cādo*, *incido*; *cādo*, *incido*.

11. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long—as *mē*, *tē*, *tū*; but the enclitic particles *quē*, *vē*, *sē*, *nē*, *tē* (*tutē*), *psē* (*reapsē*), and *ptē* (*suoptē*), are exceptions.

12. Monosyllabic substantives ending in a consonant are long—as *sōl*, sun; *vēr*, spring; *fūr*, thief; *jūs*, law; but all other monosyllabic words ending in a consonant are short—as *ūt*, *ēt*, *nēc*, *in*, *ād*, *quid*, *sēd*, *quis*, *quōt*.

The quantity of the final syllables in words of more than one syllable may be found in the chapters on *Declension*, *Conjugation*, and *Derivation*.

13. A syllable naturally short may become long by its vowel being followed by two or more consonants, whether these belong to the same word or to two different words—as *amabūnt*, *fāx*, *dāntis*, *inferrētque*, *passūs sum*.

The simple consonant *j* alone makes the preceding vowel long—as *māior*, *ējus*. *J* was probably, like *x* and *z*, pronounced as a double consonant by the Romans.

14. One syllable in every word is accented, or pronounced more emphatically than the rest. This accent may be marked by either the acute (´) or the circumflex (˘), but neither of these is now used in writing or printing Latin.

Enclitics, and prepositions when placed before the cases which they govern, have no independent accent—as *paterque*, *tute*, *per urbem*, *propter mōenia*.

In *dissyllables*, the accent is on the penultima—as *Rōmā*, *hómō*, *lētūs*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the penultima, if the ultima be long; but if it be short, the accent falls on the antepenultima, or last syllable but two—as *Rōmānūs*, *Rōmānōs*, *Métellūs*, *móribūs*, *cārmínībūs*.

CLASSES OF WORDS, OR PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. The words of the Latin language are arranged in nine classes—namely, *Substantive*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Numeral*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

16. The first four classes may be comprehended under the common appellation of Nouns. With the exception of some of the numerals, these are subject to inflection, which is called *declension*. The verb also is subject to inflection, called *con-*

jugation. But the remaining four classes, with some of the numerals, are not affected by inflection.

Comparison, which affects the terminations of adjectives and adverbs, is another kind of inflection.

17. Declension, conjugation, and comparison consist chiefly in change of termination—as *pater*, a father; *patris domus*, a father's house: *colo*, I worship; *coluisti Deum*, thou hast served God: *altus*, high; *altior*, higher; *altissimus*, highest.

The various relations indicated by this change are expressed by separate words in languages which are destitute of inflections, or possess too few to mark those relations.

The Latin language has no article; hence in translating it into other tongues the context must be the guide for supplying this word.

SUBSTANTIVE AND ITS GENDERS.

18. A substantive is the name of a distinct and independent existence, whether real or ideal—as *mensa*, a table; *liber*, a book; *Julius*, Julius; *virtus*, valour; *justitia*, justice.

19. All substantives are either generic terms or proper names—thus *equus*, a horse, is a generic term; and *Roma*, Rome, is a proper name.

Generic terms are names applied to whole classes of persons or things which have in common certain qualities and peculiarities; and *proper names* are appellations given to individuals, mostly without any regard to qualities or peculiarities.

20. All substantives are designations either of living beings or of things; and as living beings are either male or female, their names in language are either masculine or feminine. Hence the names of things naturally destitute of sex should be *neuter*—that is, of *neither* gender; but the Latin language, as well as those most nearly allied to it, assigns the masculine or feminine gender even to names of things.

The gender of Latin substantives may be ascertained partly from their meaning, and partly from certain terminations which have been appropriated to certain genders.

It is important to know the genders of Latin substantives, since adjectives, pronouns, and numerals, when united to the substantive, accommodate themselves to it by assuming a termination corresponding with the gender of the substantive—as *pater bonus*, a good father; *filia bona*, a good daughter; *sumum bonum*, the chief good.

21. Names of *males*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *months* are *masculine*, whatever their terminations may be—as *vir*, a man; *scriba*, a scribe; *poëta*, a poet; *aries*, a ram; *taurus*, a bull; *Tiberis*,

the Tiber; *Sequāna*, the Seine; *Auster*, south wind; *Januarius*, January.

22. Names of *females*, whatever be their terminations, are *feminine*—as *femina*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *soror*, a sister; *socrus*, a mother-in-law.

Most of the names of *trees, towns, countries, islands*, and *precious stones*, are likewise *feminine*—as *cedrus*, a cedar; *pinus*, a pine-tree; *Tyrus*, Tyre; *smaragdus*, emerald.

23. *Indeclinable substantives*, the names of the *letters of the alphabet*, and all words which, without being substantives, are used as such (except they refer to persons, as in the case of *boni*, good men), are *neuter*—as *fas*, divine right; *gummi*, gum; *pascha*, easter; *sinapi*, mustard; *pondo*, a pound.

24. Some substantives denoting persons are used as *masculines* when gender is not necessarily referred to—as *hostis*, an enemy; *testis*, a witness; *civis*, a citizen; *parens*, a parent. But they are used as *feminine* when directly designating a female.

25. Some substantives receive different terminations according as they designate male or female beings. Thus many *masculine substantives* ending in *-tor* have a *feminine* termination in *-trix*, and some ending in *us* or any other termination have a *feminine* form in *a*—as *victor*, a conqueror, and *victrix*, a female conqueror; *coquus*, a male cook, and *coqua*, a female cook; *rex*, a king, and *regina*, a queen. The same is the case with many names of animals—as *agnus*, a male lamb, and *agna*, a female lamb; *cervus*, a stag, and *cerva*, a hind or doe; *equus*, a horse, and *equa*, a mare.

When the *sex* is not intended to be particularly indicated, the *masculine* is preferred, according to a principle recognised in all languages.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

26. Declension is a change of termination in nouns to express the different relations in which they stand to other words in the same sentence—as *pater*, a father; *patris domus*, a father's house, or house of a father; *patri*, to a father; *patrē*, from or by a father.

CASE.

27. By change of termination the Latin language indicates *six* great or general relations, and accordingly has *six* cases—

namely, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*, which are distinguished from each other by appropriate endings.

1. The *Nominative* expresses the *subject* of an assertion—as *DEUS creavit mundum*, God created the world; in which *DEUS* is the subject or nominative.
2. The *Genitive* denotes the *author* or *possessor*, or any of the relations expressed in English by *of*—as *PATRIS filia*, a father's daughter; in which *PATRIS* is the genitive, and thus expresses the relation of *pater* to *filia*.
3. The *Dative* expresses the person to whom anything is given or done—as *pater dat FILIO librum*, the father gives to the son a book; in which *FILIO* is the dative.
4. The *Accusative* denotes the object in which an action terminates—thus, in the sentence *pater dat filio LIBRUM*, *LIBRUM* is the accusative or object given.
5. The *Vocative* is used in addressing an object—as *mater*, O mother! or simply, mother!
6. The *Ablative* expresses primarily the *source* whence anything proceeds, but, besides, it expresses a variety of such relations as *separation, instrumentality, time, place, &c.* which are indicated in English by the prepositions *from, by, with, in, at, &c.*

NUMBER.

28. A substantive may denote a single individual or many—as *pater*, father; *patres*, fathers. When it denotes *one*, it is said to be in the *singular* number; and when *more than one*, in the *plural*.

29. In Latin there are two numbers—the Singular and the Plural—in each of which the noun has the six cases.

30. There are five modes in which nouns are declined; hence there are *Five Declensions*. Each of these declensions has a peculiar termination in the genitive singular—as

Declensions.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Terminations of the } Genitives singular, }	-ae.	-ī.	-īs.	-ūs.	-eī.

31. Certain features are common to all the declensions—

1. All *neuter* nouns have the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* alike, which in the plural end in *-ā*.

Neuters are found only in the second, third, and fourth declensions.

2. The *accusative* of masculine and feminine nouns of all the declensions ends in the singular in *-m*, and in the plural in *-s*.
3. The *vocative*, both singular and plural, is like the *nominative*, except in nouns in *-us* of the second declension.
4. The *genitive plural* of all the declensions ends in *-um*.
5. The *dative and ablative plural* are alike in all the declensions.

32. The following table exhibits all the case-endings of the five declensions :—

SINGULAR.				
1st.	2d.	3d.	4th.	5th.
Nom. <i>ā</i> (<i>ē, ās, ēs</i>)	<i>us, er</i> (nt. <i>um</i>)	<i>a, e, o, s, c, l, n,</i> [<i>r, t</i>]	<i>ūs</i> (nt. <i>ū</i>)	<i>ēs</i>
Gen. <i>ae</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>ī</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ēī</i>
Dat. <i>ae</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>uī</i>	<i>ēī</i>
Acc. <i>am</i> (<i>ēn</i>)	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i> (<i>im</i>)	<i>um</i> (nt. <i>ū</i>)	<i>em</i>
Voc. like Nom.	<i>ē, er</i> (nt. <i>um</i>)	like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.
Abl. <i>ā</i> (<i>ē</i>)	<i>ō</i>	<i>ī</i> or <i>ī</i>	<i>ū</i>	<i>ē</i>

PLURAL.				
Nom. <i>ae</i>	<i>ī</i> (nt. <i>ā</i>)	<i>ēs</i> (nt. <i>ā</i> or <i>ī</i>)	<i>ūs</i> (nt. <i>ū</i>)	<i>ēs</i>
Gen. <i>ārum</i>	<i>ōrum</i>	<i>um</i> or <i>ium</i>	<i>uum</i>	<i>ērum</i>
Dat. <i>īs</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus</i> or <i>ūbus</i>	<i>ēbus</i>
Acc. <i>ās</i>	<i>ōs</i> (nt. <i>ā</i>)	like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.
Voc. like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.
Abl. like Dat.	like Dat.	like Dat.	like Dat.	like Dat.

33. In order to decline a noun, it is necessary to know the *genitive*, which consists of the stem of the word and the termination; the stem remains the same in all the cases, the termination being the only part that suffers change.

FIRST DECLENSION.

34. All nouns purely Latin (both adjective and substantive) belonging to the *first declension*, terminate in the *nominative singular* with *-ā*, which becomes *-ae* in the *genitive*.

There are a few Greek words ending in *-ās, -ē, -ēs*, which also belong to this declension, but are declined somewhat differently from genuine Latin words.

35. In this declension the *nominative singular* and the stem are identical.

Model Examples.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>mens-ă</i> , a table. Gen. <i>mens-ae</i> , of a table. Dat. <i>mens-ae</i> , to a table. Acc. <i>mens-am</i> , a table. Voc. <i>mens-ă</i> , table! Abl. <i>mens-ă</i> , from, with, or by a table.	Nom. <i>mens-ae</i> , tables. Gen. <i>mens-ărum</i> , of tables. Dat. <i>mens-is</i> , to tables. Acc. <i>mens-ăs</i> , tables. Voc. <i>mens-ae</i> , tables! Abl. <i>mens-is</i> , from, with, or by tables.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>vi-ă</i> , a road. Gen. <i>vi-ae</i> , of a road. Dat. <i>vi-ae</i> , to a road. Acc. <i>vi-am</i> , a road. Voc. <i>vi-ă</i> , road! Abl. <i>vi-ă</i> , from, with, or by a road.	Nom. <i>vi-ae</i> , roads. Gen. <i>vi-ărum</i> , of roads. Dat. <i>vi-is</i> , to roads. Acc. <i>vi-ăs</i> , roads. Voc. <i>vi-ae</i> , roads! Abl. <i>vi-is</i> , from, with, or by roads.

Exercises.

Penna, a wing or feather; *epistola*, a letter; *hora*, an hour; *porta*, a gate; *victoria*, victory; *silva*, a forest; *fuga*, flight; *uva*, a grape.

All the feminine forms of adjectives and participles ending in *a* follow the first declension.

The first declension is sometimes called the *A* declension, because the termination *a*, which appears in the nominative, is retained in all the other cases, though in some it disappears, being contracted with another vowel contained in the termination.

The dative and ablative plural of feminine nouns in *a* originally ended in *ăbus*, subsequently contracted into *is*; but the ancient form has been preserved in a few words, to distinguish them from masculines which follow the second declension, and make their dative and ablative plural in *is*—as *dea* (a goddess), *filia* (a daughter), *anima* (soul), *liberta* (freedwoman), *equa* (a mare), *mula* (a mule); which make their dative and ablative plural *deăbus*, *filiaibus*, *animăbus*, *libertăbus*, *equăbus*, *mulăbus*, if the gender be not sufficiently clear from the context.

Greek words terminating in *ăs*, *ēs*, and *ē*, are declined like the following models. Many of them are proper names, and have no plural; but those which have a plural form it, like the genuine Latin substantives, in *-a*:—

Nom. <i>Aene-ăs</i> . Gen. <i>Aene-ae</i> . Dat. <i>Aene-ae</i> . Acc. <i>Aene-am</i> or <i>-an</i> . Voc. <i>Aene-ă</i> . Abl. <i>Aene-ă</i> .	Nom. <i>Anchis-ēs</i> . Gen. <i>Anchis-ae</i> . Dat. <i>Anchis-ae</i> . Acc. <i>Anchis-ēn</i> or <i>-am</i> . Voc. <i>Anchis-ē</i> or <i>-ă</i> . Abl. <i>Anchis-ē</i> or <i>-ă</i> .
--	--

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>epitom-ē</i> , an abridgment.	Nom.	<i>epitom-ae</i> , abridgments.
Gen.	<i>epitom-ēs</i> .	Gen.	<i>epitom-ārum</i> .
Dat.	<i>epitom-ae</i> .	Dat.	<i>epitom-is</i> .
Acc.	<i>epitom-ēn</i> .	Acc.	<i>epitom-ās</i> .
Voc.	<i>epitom-ē</i> .	Voc.	<i>epitom-ae</i> .
Abl.	<i>epitom-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>epitom-īs</i> .

The following Greek words of this declension are the most common in Latin:—*Boreas* (north wind), *Gorgias*, *Midas*, *Pythagoras*; *planetes* (a planet), *comeles* (a comet), *dynastes* (a ruler), *satrapes* (a satrap), *sophistes* (a sophist), *anagnostes* (a reader), *Thersites*, and all patronymics—that is, words derived from the name of a person, and denoting origin or descent from him; they end in *des*—as *Aeneades*, a son or descendant of Aeneas; *Pelides*, a son or descendant of Peleus; *Priamides*, a son or descendant of Priam; *Tydidēs*, a son or descendant of Tydeus. Lastly, such words as *aloē*, the aloe; *crambe*, cabbage; *Circe*, *Danaë*, *Phoenixe*, *Penelope*, *Daphne*.

36. Words of this declension ending in *ā* or *ē* are feminine, and those in *ās* or *ēs* are masculine.

Some words in *a* denoting males are masculine—as *auriga* (a charioteer), *collēga* (a colleague), *nuuta* (a sailor), *poēta* (a poet), *scriba* (a scribe), *agricola* (a husbandman), *parricida* (a murderer), *incōla* (an inhabitant), *advēna* (a comer, or one who arrives.) Names of rivers in *a* are masculine, according to the general rule; but *Allia*, *Albula*, and *Matrōna* (the Marne), are feminine. *Hadria* (the Adriatic Sea) is likewise masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

37. Latin nouns of the second declension (both substantive and adjective) terminate with *i* in the genitive singular.

38. Masculine nouns of this declension end in *-us* and *-er*, and neuters in *-um*.

39. *Vir* (a man), with its compounds, and *satur* (full), are the only words in *-ir* and *-ur* of this declension.

Model Examples.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>hort-us</i> , the garden.	Nom.	<i>hort-i</i> , the gardens.
Gen.	<i>hort-i</i> , of the garden.	Gen.	<i>hort-ōrum</i> , of the gardens.
Dat.	<i>hort-ō</i> , to the garden.	Dat.	<i>hort-is</i> , to the gardens.
Acc.	<i>hort-um</i> , the garden.	Acc.	<i>hort-ōs</i> , the gardens.
Voc.	<i>hort-ē</i> , O garden!	Voc.	<i>hort-i</i> , O gardens!
Abl.	<i>hort-ō</i> , from, with, or by the garden.	Abl.	<i>hort-is</i> , from, with, or by the gardens.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>ager</i> , a field.	Nom.	<i>agr-i</i> , fields.
Gen.	<i>agr-i</i> , of a field.	Gen.	<i>agr-ōrum</i> , of fields.
Dat.	<i>agr-ō</i> , to a field.	Dat.	<i>agr-is</i> , to fields.
Acc.	<i>agr-um</i> , a field.	Acc.	<i>agr-ōs</i> , fields.
Voc.	<i>ager</i> , O field!	Voc.	<i>agr-i</i> , O fields!
Abl.	<i>agr-ō</i> , from, with, or by a field.	Abl.	<i>agr-is</i> , from, with, or by fields.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>puer</i> , the boy.	Nom.	<i>puer-i</i> , the boys.
Gen.	<i>puer-i</i> , of the boy.	Gen.	<i>puer-ōrum</i> , of the boys.
Dat.	<i>puer-ō</i> , to the boy.	Dat.	<i>puer-is</i> , to the boys.
Acc.	<i>puer-um</i> , the boy.	Acc.	<i>puer-ōs</i> , the boys.
Voc.	<i>puer</i> , O boy!	Voc.	<i>puer-i</i> , O boys!
Abl.	<i>puer-ō</i> , from, with, or by the boy.	Abl.	<i>puer-is</i> , from, with, or by the boys.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>vir</i> , the man.	Nom.	<i>vir-i</i> , the men.
Gen.	<i>vir-i</i> , of the man.	Gen.	<i>vir-ōrum</i> , of the men.
Dat.	<i>vir-ō</i> , to the man.	Dat.	<i>vir-is</i> , to the men.
Acc.	<i>vir-um</i> , the man.	Acc.	<i>vir-ōs</i> , the men.
Voc.	<i>vir</i> , O man!	Voc.	<i>vir-i</i> , O men!
Abl.	<i>vir-ō</i> , from, with, or by the man.	Abl.	<i>vir-is</i> , from, with, or by the men.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>templ-um</i> , the temple.	Nom.	<i>templ-ā</i> , the temples.
Gen.	<i>templ-i</i> , of the temple.	Gen.	<i>templ-ōrum</i> , of the temples.
Dat.	<i>templ-ō</i> , to the temple.	Dat.	<i>templ-is</i> , to the temples.
Acc.	<i>templ-um</i> , the temple.	Acc.	<i>templ-ā</i> , the temples.
Voc.	<i>templ-um</i> , O temple!	Voc.	<i>templ-ā</i> , O temples!
Abl.	<i>templ-ō</i> , from, with, or by the temple.	Abl.	<i>templ-is</i> , from, with, or by the temples.

Exercises.

Agnus, a lamb; *annus*, a year; *digitus*, a finger; *dolus*, a trick; *dominus*, a master or owner; *antrum*, a cave; *astrum*, a star; *bellum*, a war; *donum*, a gift; *ovum*, an egg.

Respecting the peculiarity in the declension of neuters, see No. 31.

Most nouns of this declension ending in *er* retain *e* only in the nominative and vocative like *ager*, where it is inserted for the purpose of facilitating the pronunciation; but in the other cases they omit it. The following retain *e* in all the cases:—*adulter*, an adulterer; *socer*,

father-in-law; *gener*, son-in-law; *Liber*, the god Liber or Bacchus; *liberi* (plur.), children (but *libri*, books, from *liber*); *vesper*, evening; the adjectives *asper*, rough; *liber*, free; *lacer*, torn; *miser*, miserable; *prosper*, prosperous; *tener*, tender; and all nouns compounded with *fer* and *ger* (from *fero* and *gero*)—as *mortifer*, deadly; *armiger*, bearing arms; and lastly, the names of nations—*Iber*, an Iberian, and *Celtiber*, a Celtiberian, and the Greek word *presbyter*, an elder. *Dexter*, right, and *Mulciber* (a surname of Vulcan), sometimes retain the *e* in the oblique cases, and sometimes drop it.

The second declension is sometimes called the *O* declension; for in the first place, several cases end in *o*; in the second, those which now end in *um* and *us*, anciently ended in *om* and *os*; and lastly, even the cases which now end in *i* or *is* seem at one time to have ended in *oi* and *ois*. The *o*, therefore, originally appeared in all the case-endings of the second declension.

The following adjectives and pronouns, the masculine and neuter of which follow the second, and the feminine the first declension, make their genitive in all the three genders in *ius*, and the dative in *i*:—*unus*, one; *solus*, alone; *totus*, all; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another; *alter*, one of two; *uter*, either; *neuter*, neither; together with the compounds of *uter* and *alter*—such as *uterque*, each of two; *utervis*, *utercunque*, *uterlibet*, whichever of two; e.g. *unus*, gen. *unius*, dat. *unī*; *solus*, gen. *soli*, dat. *solī*. In all their other cases they follow the declensions named above. The *i* before *us* in the genitive is sometimes shortened; and this is most frequently the case with *alter*, gen. *altertus*.

40. Proper names in *ius* form their vocative in *i*—as *Mercurius*, voc. *Mercurī*; *Julius*, voc. *Julī*. Among common nouns this vocative occurs only in *filius* (a son), voc. *filī*; *genius*, voc. *genī*; and *Feretrius*, voc. *Feretrī*. The word *deus* (God) may form the nom., dat., and ablat. plural *dei*, *deis*; but it more commonly has *dii* and *diis*, or the contracted forms *dī* and *dīs*.

The following words in *us* are exceptions to the general rule on the genders:—

1. The names of towns and islands in *us* are feminine—as *Corinthus*, *Ephesus*, *Rhodus* (See No. 22.) To these must be added the names of some countries in *us*—as *Aegyptus*, *Chersonesus*, *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, though *Canopus* is masculine.

2. The names of trees, and of certain shrubs and precious stones, are feminine; e.g. *fagus*, beech; *figus*, a fig-tree; *malus*, an apple-tree; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *pomus*, an apple-tree; *populus*, a poplar; *ulmus*, elm-tree; *papyrus*, the papyrus plant; *juniperus*, juniper; *amethystus*, amethyst. See No. 22.

3. Some Greek words retain the feminine gender which they have in Greek—as *methodus*, method; *periódus*, period; *átomus*, an atom; *antídōtus*, antidote; *dialectus*, dialect; *diamētrus*, diameter; *diphthongus*, diphthong; *paragrāphus*, paragraph.

4. The following words in *us* are neuter:—*virus*, juice or poison; *vulgus*, the common people (is, however, sometimes used as a masculine); *pelagus*, the sea.

THIRD DECLENSION.

41. The third declension is more difficult than either the first or second, for in it the nominative is sometimes the same as the pure stem, or is the stem with *s* added (either with or without a euphonic *e* or *i*), or the stem is altogether disguised in the nominative; so that one of the oblique cases must be known in order to distinguish the stem from the termination.

42. All words of the third declension terminate with *-is* in the genitive case singular.

The addition of *s* to the stem for the purpose of forming the nominative, produces considerable changes; for when the stem ends in *c* or *g*, it with the *s* becomes *x*—as *grex* from the stem *greg*, *rex* from *reg*, and *judex* from *judic*. In the last instance the *i* becomes *e*; and in the case of *nox* from *noct*, the *t* is omitted for the sake of euphony. When the stem ends in *t* or *d*, these letters are dropped before the *s*—as in *aetas* from *aetat*, *miles* from *milit*, *amans* from *amant*, *dens* from *dent*, *praeses* from *praesid*. In many cases *i* or *e* euphonic is inserted between the final consonant of the stem and the *s*—as in *avis*, *navis*, and *ovis*, for *av*, *nav*, and *ov*; *caedes* and *clades*, for *caed* and *clad*. In some words, the *s* in the nominative is only the representative of *r* (*r* and *s* being interchangeable), and belongs to the stem—as in *corpus*, that is, *corpor*; *decus*, that is, *decor*; *flos* for *flor*, *honor* for *honor*, *labos* for *labor*, &c.

43. Nouns of the third declension may therefore be divided into the following five classes:—

1. Nouns in which the nominative itself is the stem, so that the terminations of the oblique cases are merely added to it—as

Masculine.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>consul</i> , a consul.	Nom. <i>consul-ēs</i> , consuls.
Gen. <i>consul-is</i> .	Gen. <i>consul-um</i> .
Dat. <i>consul-i</i> .	Dat. <i>consul-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>consul-em</i> .	Acc. <i>consul-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>consul</i> .	Voc. <i>consul-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>consul-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>consul-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>honor</i> , honour.	Nom. <i>honor-ēs</i> , honours.
Gen. <i>honor-is</i> .	Gen. <i>honor-um</i> .
Dat. <i>honor-i</i> .	Dat. <i>honor-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>honor-em</i> .	Acc. <i>honor-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>honor</i> .	Voc. <i>honor-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>honor-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>honor-ibus</i> .

Neuter.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>animal</i> , animal.	Nom. <i>animal-ia</i> , animals.
Gen. <i>animal-īs</i> .	Gen. <i>animal-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>animal-ī</i> .	Dat. <i>animal-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>animal</i> .	Acc. <i>animal-ia</i> .
Voc. <i>animal</i> .	Voc. <i>animal-ia</i> .
Abl. <i>animal-ī</i> .	Abl. <i>animal-ibus</i> .

Stems ending in *l* or *r* take no additional nominative termination. Respecting the neuter termination of the plural *ia*, and the ablative singular *ī*, see below.

2. Nouns in which *s* only is added to the stem, to form the nominative—as

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>urb-s</i> , a city.	Nom. <i>urb-ēs</i> , cities.
Gen. <i>urb-īs</i> .	Gen. <i>urb-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>urb-ī</i> .	Dat. <i>urb-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>urb-em</i> .	Acc. <i>urb-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>urb-s</i> .	Voc. <i>urb-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>urb-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>urb-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>grex</i> (= <i>greg-s</i>), a flock.	Nom. <i>greg-ēs</i> , flocks.
Gen. <i>greg-īs</i> .	Gen. <i>greg-um</i> .
Dat. <i>greg-ī</i> .	Dat. <i>greg-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>greg-em</i> .	Acc. <i>greg-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>grex</i> .	Voc. <i>greg-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>greg-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>greg-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>radix</i> (= <i>radic-s</i>), root.	Nom. <i>radic-ēs</i> , roots.
Gen. <i>radic-īs</i> .	Gen. <i>radic-um</i> .
Dat. <i>radic-ī</i> .	Dat. <i>radic-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>radic-em</i> .	Acc. <i>radic-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>radix</i> .	Voc. <i>radic-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>radic-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>radic-ibus</i> .

3. Nouns in which *e* or *i* is inserted between the stem and the final *s* of the nominative.

Words of this description, which are very numerous, in the nominative consist of the stem and the termination *is* or *es*, and thus resemble in their declension nouns of the first and second declensions, having in the oblique cases the same number of syllables as in the nominative—as

SINGULAR.	
Nom.	<i>nav-is</i> , a ship.
Gen.	<i>nav-is</i> .
Dat.	<i>nav-i</i> .
Acc.	<i>nav-em</i> .
Voc.	<i>nav-is</i> .
Abl.	<i>nav-e</i> , or <i>nav-i</i> .

PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>nav-ēs</i> , ships.
Gen.	<i>nav-ium</i> .
Dat.	<i>nav-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>nav-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>nav-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>nav-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	
Nom.	<i>clad-ēs</i> , a defeat.
Gen.	<i>clad-is</i> .
Dat.	<i>clad-i</i> .
Acc.	<i>clad-em</i> .
Voc.	<i>clad-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>clad-e</i> .

PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>clad-ēs</i> , defeats.
Gen.	<i>clad-ium</i> .
Dat.	<i>clad-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>clad-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>clad-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>clad-ibus</i> .

4. Nouns in which the final consonants of the stem (*d*, *t*) are omitted before the *s* of the nominative. Sometimes also *i* in the final syllable of the stem is changed into *e*—as

SINGULAR.	
Nom.	<i>aeta-s</i> (= <i>aetat-s</i>), age.
Gen.	<i>aetat-is</i> .
Dat.	<i>aetat-i</i> .
Acc.	<i>aetat-em</i> .
Voc.	<i>aeta-s</i> .
Abl.	<i>aetat-e</i> .

PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>aetat-ēs</i> , ages.
Gen.	<i>aetat-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>aetat-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>aetat-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>aetat-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>aetat-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	
Nom.	<i>mile-s</i> (= <i>milit-s</i>), sol-
Gen.	<i>milit-is</i> .
Dat.	<i>milit-i</i> .
Acc.	<i>milit-em</i> .
Voc.	<i>mile-s</i> .
Abl.	<i>milit-e</i> .

PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>milit-ēs</i> , soldiers.
Gen.	<i>milit-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>milit-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>milit-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>milit-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>milit-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.	
Nom.	<i>lau-s</i> (= <i>laud-s</i>), praise.
Gen.	<i>laud-is</i> .
Dat.	<i>laud-i</i> .
Acc.	<i>laud-em</i> .
Voc.	<i>lau-s</i> .
Abl.	<i>laud-e</i> .

PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>laud-ēs</i> , praises.
Gen.	<i>laud-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>laud-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>laud-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>laud-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>laud-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>gland-s</i> (= <i>gland-s</i>),	Nom.	<i>gland-ēs</i> , acorns.
Gen.	<i>gland-īs</i> . [acorn.]	Gen.	<i>gland-ūm</i> .
Dat.	<i>gland-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>gland-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>gland-em</i> .	Acc.	<i>gland-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>gland-s</i> .	Voc.	<i>gland-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>gland-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>gland-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>nepo-s</i> (= <i>nepot-s</i>),	Nom.	<i>nepot-ēs</i> , grandsons.
Gen.	<i>nepot-īs</i> . [grandson.]	Gen.	<i>nepot-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>nepot-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>nepot-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>nepot-em</i> .	Acc.	<i>nepot-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>nepo-s</i> .	Voc.	<i>nepot-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>nepot-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>nepot-ibus</i> .

5. Nouns in which the stem, for the sake of euphony, is disguised in the nominative either by the omission of its final consonant, or by the addition of a euphonic vowel, or by the change of one vowel into another—as

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>sermo</i> (= <i>sermon</i>), con-	Nom.	<i>sermon-ēs</i> , conversa-
Gen.	<i>sermon-īs</i> . [versation.]	Gen.	<i>sermon-um</i> . [tions.]
Dat.	<i>sermon-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>sermon-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>sermon-em</i> .	Acc.	<i>sermon-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>sermo</i> .	Voc.	<i>sermon-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>sermon-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>sermon-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>homo</i> (= <i>homin</i>), man.	Nom.	<i>homin-ēs</i> , men.
Gen.	<i>homin-īs</i> .	Gen.	<i>homin-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>homin-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>homin-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>homin-em</i> .	Acc.	<i>homin-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>homo</i> .	Voc.	<i>homin-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>homin-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>homin-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>pat-e-r</i> (= <i>patr</i>), father.	Nom.	<i>patr-ēs</i> , fathers.
Gen.	<i>patr-īs</i> .	Gen.	<i>patr-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>patr-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>patr-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>patr-em</i> .	Acc.	<i>patr-ēs</i> .
Voc.	<i>pat-e-r</i> .	Voc.	<i>patr-ēs</i> .
Abl.	<i>patr-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>patr-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>nomen</i> (= <i>nomin</i> , nt.),	Nom.	<i>nomin-ā</i> , names.
Gen.	<i>nomin-īs</i> . [name.]	Gen.	<i>nomin-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>nomin-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>nomin-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>nomen</i> .	Acc.	<i>nomin-ā</i> .
Voc.	<i>nomen</i> .	Voc.	<i>nomin-ā</i> .
Abl.	<i>nomin-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>nomin-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>caput</i> (= <i>capit</i> , nt.),	Nom.	<i>capit-ā</i> , heads.
Gen.	<i>capit-īs</i> . [head.]	Gen.	<i>capit-um</i> .
Dat.	<i>capit-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>capit-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>caput</i> .	Acc.	<i>capit-ā</i> .
Voc.	<i>caput</i> .	Voc.	<i>capit-ā</i> .
Abl.	<i>capit-ē</i> .	Abl.	<i>capit-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>lac</i> (= <i>lact</i> , nt.), milk.		
Gen.	<i>lact-īs</i> .		
Dat.	<i>lact-ī</i> .		
Acc.	<i>lac</i> .		Not used.
Voc.	<i>lac</i> .		
Abl.	<i>lact-ē</i> .		

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>mar-ē</i> (= <i>mar</i>), sea.	Nom.	<i>mar-iā</i> , seas.
Gen.	<i>mar-īs</i> .	Gen.	<i>mar-ium</i> .
Dat.	<i>mar-ī</i> .	Dat.	<i>mar-ibus</i> .
Acc.	<i>mar-ē</i> .	Acc.	<i>mar-iā</i> .
Voc.	<i>mar-ē</i> .	Voc.	<i>mar-iā</i> .
Abl.	<i>mar-ī</i> .	Abl.	<i>mar-ibus</i> .

The following is a list of the terminations of the third declension, such as they appear in the nominative; added to each is its genitive and gender, so far as the latter is indicated by the termination:—

1. Nouns in *a* are neuter, and have the stem in *at*, so that their genitive is in *at-is*—as *poëma*, *poëmatīs*.
2. Nouns in *al* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is* to the nominative—as *animal*, *animālīs*. *Sal*, however, is commonly masculine (rarely neuter), like the proper name *Hannibal*, and makes its genitive *sālīs*, like *Hannibālīs*.
3. Nouns in *ar* are neuter, and form their genitive by adding *is* to the nominative—as *calcar* (spur), gen. *calcārīs*. In some, the syllable *ar* preceding the termination is short—as *jubar*, *āris*, ray or beam; *nectar*, *āris*, nectar. The following words in *ar* are masculine:—*Caesar*, *āris*; *Arar*, *āris*; and *lar*, *lāris*, a household god; *par*, *pāris*, a companion or equal; and its compounds—as *dispar*, *dispāris*.

4. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have their stem in *at*; they accordingly make their genitive in *ātis*—as *aetas*, *aetātis*. In the same manner are declined adjectives in *as* derived from names of towns—as *Arpinas*, *ātis*, an inhabitant of Arpinum. *Anas* (a duck), however, makes its genitive *anātis*; *as* (a coin), makes *assis*; *mas* (a male), *māris*; *vas* (a surety), *vādīs*; but *vas* (a vessel) is neuter, and makes its genitive *vāsīs*.
 5. Nouns in *ax* from a stem in *ac*, form the genitive by changing the *s* contained in the *x* into *is*, and are feminine—as *pax* (peace), *pācis*; *fornax* (oven), *fornācis*; *fax* (a torch), *fācis*. All adjectives in *ax* make the genitive in the same way.
 6. Nouns in *c*, of which there are only two, are neuter—*lac* (milk), gen. *lactis*; and *alec* (pickle), gen. *alēcis*.
 7. Nouns in *e* are neuter, and make their genitive by changing *e* into *is*—as *mare* (the sea), gen. *maris*; *facile* (easy), *facilis*.
 8. The few nouns in *el* represent the pure root, and form their genitive by doubling *l* and adding *is*. They are neuter—as *mel* (honey), gen. *mellis*; *fel* (bile), gen. *fellis*.
 9. Nouns in *en*, forming their genitive in *inis*, are generally neuter; but the following are masculine:—*pecten*, a comb; *flamen*, a priest; *cornicen*, a player on the horn; *fidicen*, a player on the lyre; *tibicen*, a flute-player; *tubicen*, a trumpeter; and *oscen*, a singing-bird. Those making their genitive in *ēnis* are masculine—as *ren* (kidney), gen. *rēnis*; but *Siren* (a Siren) and *Troezen* (a Greek town) are of course feminine.
 10. Nouns in *er* either represent the pure stem, and only add *is* in the genitive; or the *e* before the *r* is only euphonic, and is thrown out in the genitive. Those of the first class, making their genitive in *ēris*, are generally masculine—as *carcer*, *carcēris*; but the following are neuter:—*cadāver*, a dead body; *tuber*, a swelling; *uber*, udder; *verbera* (a plural—the singular *verber* does not occur), blows; and all botanical names—as *acer*, maple-tree; *papaver*, poppy; *piper*, pepper. But *mulier*, *mulieris*, a woman, is of course feminine. The adjectives *degener* (degenerate), *pauper* (poor), and *uber* (fertile), likewise make their genitive in *ēris*.
 - Those of the second class, which throw out the *e* in the genitive, are generally masculine—as *venter* (belly), gen. *ventris*. But *linter*, a boat, and *mater*, mother, are feminine. In the same manner are declined all substantives in *ter* (except *later*, gen. *lateris*); and all adjectives in *er*, which make their feminine in *is*, and the neuter in *e*—as *acer*, *alacer*, *October*, *November*. The two neuters *vēr* (spring) and *iter* (journey) make their genitive respectively *vērīs* and *itinerīs*.
 11. Nouns in *es* are divided into two classes, for the *es* is either simply the nominative termination (the *e* being only euphonic), which in the genitive is changed into *is*; or the consonant *t* or *d* has been thrown out before the *s* in the nominative, and reappears in the genitive. Those of the former class are commonly feminine—as *caedes* (murder), gen. *caedis*; *clades* (defeat), gen. *cladis*; but *palmes* (wood-pigeon) is either masculine or feminine; and *vepres* (a thorn-bush, commonly plural), *verres* (a boar), and the names of rivers, as *Euphrates*, *Araxes*, are masculine. (Compare No. 21.)
- In those nouns in which *t* or *d* has dropped out before *s* of the nominative, *e* either belongs to them, or has arisen from a euphonic

change of *i* into *e*—as *paries*, gen. *parietis*, and *miles*, gen. *militis*. Those which make their genitive in *itis* are masculine—as *miles* (a soldier), *eques* (a horseman), gen. *equitis*; *hospes* (a guest), gen. *hospitis*; but *merges*, *itis* (a sheaf of corn), is feminine. In like manner are declined nearly all adjectives in *es*—as *dives* (rich), *sospes* (safe), *superstes* (surviving), &c. Those which make their genitive in *itis* are partly masculine and partly feminine—as *paries*, *parietis*, masc. (a wall); *seges*, *segetis*, fem. (a field); *aries*, masc. (a ram); *interpres*, masc. (an interpreter.) In like manner are declined the following adjectives:—*hebes*, dull; *indiges*, native; *praepes*, swift; *teres*, round or smooth.

In those nouns in which *d* of the stem has dropped out before *s*, *e* likewise either belongs to the stem or is a euphonic change for *i*—as *pes* (foot), gen. *pēdis*; and *obses* (hostage), gen. *obsidis*. Words of this kind are commonly masculine; but *merces*, *mercēdis* (reward), *quies*, *quēdis* (quiet), and its compound *requies* (tranquillity), are feminine. The adjectives *deses* and *reses* are declined like *obses*, and *locuples* like *quies*.

Ceres, gen. *Cerēris*, *pubes* and *impubes*, gen. *pubēris* and *impubēris*, do not belong to this class; for the *s* being the same as *r*, they present the pure stem in the nominative.

12. Nouns in *ex* are formed from the stem *ec* or *eg*, and accordingly change the *x* either into *cis* or *gis* in the genitive. In some of them, *e* belongs to the stem, while in others it is a euphonic change of *i* into *e*—as *rex*, *rēgis*; *prex*, *prēcis*; *apex*, *apīcis*. Most of those which make their genitive in *icis* are masculine—as *apex*, the extreme point; but the following are feminine:—*ilex*, a species of oak; *carex*, sheer-grass; *forfex*, a pair of scissors; *vītex*, the chaste-tree; and *pellex*, a mistress. Some are used both as masculine and feminine—as *imbrex*, shingle; *obex*, a bolt; *cortex*, rind; *silex*, flint-stone; but *atriplex*, the herb orage, is neuter.

Those in which the stem ends in *g* are not very numerous, and are mostly masculine—as *rex*, *rēgis* (a king); *remex*, *remīgis* (a rower); *grex*, *grēgis* (a flock); *Lelex*, *Lelēgis*; but *lex*, *lēgis* (law), is feminine.

13. Nouns in *i* are neuter, and change the *i* into *is* in the genitive—as *sinapi* (mustard), gen. *sinapis*; or into *itis*—as *oxymeli* (a mixture of vinegar and honey), gen. *oxymelitis*.

14. Nouns in *il* represent the pure stem, are masculine, and form the genitive by simply adding *is* to the nominative—as *pugil* (a pugilist), gen. *pugilis*; *vigil* (watchful), gen. *vigilis*.

15. Nouns in *is* are divided into two classes. In the first, the termination *is* simply is added to the stem, the *s* being the nominative ending, and the *i* a euphonic addition—as in *navis* from *nav-i-s*. In the second class, the *s* of the nominative has caused more or less important changes in the stem—as in *cuspis* for *cuspid-s*, *sanguis* for *sanguin-s*, and *cinis* for *ciner* (where the *e* is changed into *i*, and *r* converted into its equivalent *s*.)

Nouns of the first class have the genitive like the nominative, and are mostly feminine—as *navis* (ship), gen. *navis*; *avis* (bird), gen. *avis*; *vallis* (valley), gen. *vallis*. But many of them are masculine—as *amnis*, river; *axis*, axis; *callis*, path (sometimes feminine); *canalis*, canal; *cassis*, hunter's net; *caulis*, stalk; *collis*, hill; *crinis*, hair; *ensis*, sword; *fascis*, bundle; *finis*, end (sometimes feminine in the singular, but never in the plural); *foliis*, bellows; *funis*, rope; *fustis*,

club; *ignis*, fire; *mensis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *panis*, bread; *piscis*, fish; *postis*, a post; *scrobis*, pit; *sentis*, thorn-bush; *torquis* (also *torques* as feminine), chain; *torris*, firebrand; *unguis*, nail; *vectis*, lever; *vermis*, worm. Besides, a number of adjectives which are used as substantives, a masculine substantive being understood—as *annalis* (*liber*), chronicle; *natalis* (*dies*), birthday; *molaris* (*lapis* or *dens*), a millstone or grinder; *pugillares* (*libri*), tablet for writing; *Aprilis* (*mensis*), April. The compounds of *as*, as *decussis*, ten asses, and some others which are masculine on account of their meaning—as *hostis*, enemy; *testis*, witness; *Tiberis*, the river Tiber. *Canis* (dog) and *anguis* (snake) are used oftener as masculine than as feminine; and *corbis* (basket) and *clunis* (haunch) are either masculine or feminine. All adjectives in *is* are declined in the same manner, the genitive being like the nominative—as *facilis*, gen. *facilis*; *acris*, gen. *acris*.

Those nouns in *is* in which the *d* or *t* of the stem is thrown out before *s* in the nominative, form their genitive in *idis* and *itis*, and are mostly feminine—as *cuspidis* (point), gen. *cuspidis*; *cassidis* (helmet), gen. *cassidis*; *pyramidis* (pyramid), gen. *pyramidis*; *lis* (dispute), gen. *litis*; *Samnis*, gen. *Samnitis*; *Dis*, gen. *Ditis*; *Quiris*, gen. *Quiritis*. *Lapis* (a stone), gen. *lapidis*, and *Phasis*, the name of a river, are masculine.

A few masculines in *is* make the genitive in *inis*, restoring *n*, which had been dropped before *s* of the nominative—as *sanguis* (blood), gen. *sanguinis*; *pollis* (fine flour, not used in the nom.), gen. *pollinis*.

Some, again, which end in *is*, have changed the *er* of the stem into *is*, and accordingly make their genitive in *eris*—as *cinis* (ashes), gen. *cineris*; so also *cucumis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vomis* (also *vomer*), ploughshare.

16. Nouns in *ix* are feminine. As they are formed from a stem ending in *c* or *g*, the *x* is changed in the genitive either into *cis* or *gis*—as *salix* (willow), gen. *salicis*; *radix* (root), gen. *radicis*; *strix* (a fabulous bird), gen. *strigis*. The following are masculine:—*calix*, *icis*, cup; *fornix*, *icis*, vault; while *varix* (a swollen vein) is both masculine and feminine. *Phoenix*, the name of a bird, as well as of a people, is masculine. *Nix* (snow), gen. *nivis*, is irregular.

17. Nouns ending in *o* represent the stem but imperfectly, for sometimes an *n* has been thrown out after *o*—as in *sermo* (conversation), gen. *sermōn-is*; and sometimes the *o* represents a stem ending in *in*—as *virgo* (maiden), gen. *virgīn-is*. Two classes, therefore, must be distinguished.

Words of the first class make their genitive in *ōnis*, and are generally masculine—as *sermo*. But those which end in *io*, and are derived from verbs, are feminine—as *lectio*, reading; *oratio*, speaking or speech; *legio* (from *lēgo*, I select), a legion; *regio* (from *rego*, I direct), a district; *natio* (from *nascor*), a nation; so also *communio* (from the adjective *communis*), community; and *consortio* (from *consors*); but all other substantives in *io* are masculine—as *vespertilio*, a bat; *scipio*, staff; *pugio*, dagger; *septentrio*, north. Some words of this class are masculine, notwithstanding their being names of towns—as *Sulmo*, *Narbo*, and *Vesontio*. A few words have the *o* short in the genitive—as *Macedo*, gen. *Macedōnis*; and *Seno*, gen. *Senōnis*.

Words of the second class change *o* of the nominative into *inis* in the genitive; this is the case chiefly in those which end in *do* and *go*,

most of which are feminine—as *hirundo* (swallow), gen. *hirundinis*; *imago* (image), gen. *imaginis*; *Carthago* (Carthage), gen. *Carthaginis*. The following, however, are masculine:—*ordo*, order; *cardo*, hinge; *margo*, margin. *Cupido* (a god) is masculine; but in the sense of 'love' or 'desire' it is generally feminine. The following masculines also make their genitive in *inis*, like those in *do* and *go*—*homo*, man; *nemo* (i. e. *ne homo*, no man); *turbo*, whirl; and *Apollo*. The following words in *do* and *go* are masculine, and make their genitive in *onis*:—*praedo*, robber; *spado*, eunuch; *ligo*, spade; *mango*, slave-dealer; *harpago*, hook. The feminine *caro* (flesh) alone is irregular, making its genitive *carnis*.

18. The only noun ending in *ol* is the masculine *sōl* (the sun), gen. *sōlis*.
19. All nouns in *on* are Greek masculines, making their genitive, according to the Greek, either in *ōnis*, *ōnis*, or *ontis*—as *Babylōn*, gen. *Babylōnis*; *Ctesiphon*, gen. *Ctesiphontis*; *Chalcedon*, gen. *Chalcedōnis*.
20. Nouns in *or* represent the pure stem in the nominative, and form the genitive by simply adding *is* to it. Those in which *o* is long are generally masculine—as *dolor* (pain), gen. *dolōris*; but *soror* (sister) and *uxor* (wife) are feminine. All comparatives of adjectives are declined in the same manner—as *facilior* and *facilius* (more easy), gen. *faciliōris*. Nouns in which *o* is short are generally neuter—as *aequor* (surface of the sea), gen. *aequōris*; *marmor* (marble), gen. *marmōris*; *ador* (spelt), gen. *adōris*; but *arbor*, *ōris* (tree), is feminine; and *rhetor*, *ōris* (teacher of oratory), masculine.
21. Nouns in *os* either represent the pure stem (*s* being equivalent to *r*), or *t* or *d* has been dropped before *s*. The former accordingly make the genitive in *ōris*, and are masculine—as *mos* (manner), gen. *mōris*; *flos* (flower), gen. *flōris*; but *os* (mouth), gen. *ōris*, is neuter. Those in which *t* or *d* has been omitted in the nominative are sometimes feminine—as *cos* (whetstone), gen. *cōtis*; *dos* (dowry), gen. *dōtis*; and sometimes masculine—as *sacerdos* (priest), gen. *sacerdōtis*; *custos* (guardian), gen. *custōdis*. The adjectives *compos* and *impos* have *compōtis* and *impōtis*. *Bōs* (ox) has *bōvis*, and *ōs* (bone), *ossis*.
22. Nouns in *ox* have a stem ending in *c* or *g*, and accordingly make the genitive in *cis* or *gis*. These are mostly feminine—as *vox* (voice), gen. *vōcis*; *celox* (a swift-sailing ship), gen. *celōcis*. In like manner are declined adjectives in *ox*—as *atrox* (fierce), *velox* (swift); *praecox* (precocious), however, has *praecōcis*. Names of nations are of course masculine—as *Cappadox*, *Cappadōcis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrōgis*. The feminine *nox* (night) alone has *noctis*.
23. Nouns in *ul* represent the pure stem, and are masculine—as *consul* (consul), gen. *consūlis*; *exsul* (exile), gen. *exūlis*; *praesul* (one who goes before), gen. *praesūlis*.
24. Nouns in *ur* represent the pure stem, and make the genitive by simply adding *is* to it. The following are masculine:—*fur* (thief), gen. *fūris*; *furfur* (bran), gen. *furfūris*; *turtur* (turtle-dove), gen. *turtūris*; *vultur* (vulture), gen. *vultūris*; *augur* (augur), gen. *augūris*; and the adjective *cicur*, *ūris* (tame.) The following are neuter:—*fulgur* (lightning), gen. *fulgūris*; *Tibur*, *Tibūris*; *robur* (strength), gen. *robōris*; *ebur* (ivory), gen. *ebōris*; *femur* (loin), gen. *femōris*; *jecur* (liver), gen. *jecōris*.

Nouns in *us* form two classes. In some the stem ending in *d* or *t* has

lost this letter before *s* of the nominative, and accordingly recovers it in the genitive. These are all feminine—as *virtus* (virtue), gen. *virtūtis*; *salus* (safety), gen. *salūtis*; *palus* (marsh), gen. *palūdis*; *incus* (anvil), gen. *incūdīs*; *pecus* (cattle), gen. *pecūdīs*; the adjective *intercus* makes the genitive *intercūtis*. In others *us* of the nominative represents the stem *ur*, *or*, or *er*, and most of these are neuters—as *jus* (law), gen. *jūris*; *crus* (leg), gen. *crūris* (and so also *pus*, viscous matter; *rus*, country; *tus*, incense); *corpus* (body), gen. *corpōris*; *decus* (ornament), gen. *decōris*; *genus* (kind or species), gen. *genēris*; *vulnus* (wound), gen. *vulnērīs*. The following are exceptions in regard to gender:—*Ligus*, *ūris*, a Ligurian, and the plural *Lemūres*, spectres; and *lepus*, *ōris*, a hare, are masculine; *tellus*, *ūris* (earth), and *Venus*, *ēris*, are feminine.

The following words are of a different kind, *s* in the nominative being simply added to the stem:—*sus* (pig), gen. *suis*; *grus* (crane), gen. *gruis*. The only two Latin words ending in *aus*—namely, *laus* (praise) and *fraus* (fraud)—both feminine—have lost *d* before *s*, so that their genitive is *laudis*, *fraudis*. Some Greek names of places in *us* make the genitive in *untis*—as *Pessinus*, gen. *Pessinuntis*; and others make the genitive in *ōdis*—as *tripus* (tripod), gen. *tripōdis*.

26. Nouns in *y* are of Greek origin, form the genitive by simply adding *is* to the nominative, and are all neuter—as *misy* (vitriol), gen. *misys*. Those in *ys* are likewise Greek, but mostly feminine: the genitive is either *ys* or *ydīs*—as *chelys* (lyre), gen. *chelyis*; *chlamys* (cloak), *chlamydīs*. *Othrys*, gen. *Othryis*, the name of a mountain, is masculine.

27. Nouns in *yx* are all Greek, and make the genitive in *ycis*, *ycis*, *ygis*, *ygis*, or *ychis*, according as the stem in Greek ends in *c*, *g*, or *ch*. They are generally masculine—as *calyx* (cup of a flower), gen. *calycis*.

28. Nouns in *ns* have a stem ending either in *t* or *d*, which letters have been dropped before *s*. Those whose stem ends in *t*, accordingly form their genitive in *tis*, and are generally masculine—as *mons* (mountain), gen. *montis*. The following, however, are feminine:—*gens*, family or nation; *lens*, a kind of pulse; *mens*, mind; *frons*, forehead; *bidens*, a sheep of two years old; *serpens* (namely, *bestia*), a snake; *continens* (namely, *terra*), the continent. To this class of words belong all participles and adjectives in *ns*.

Those whose stem ends in *d*, and which make the genitive in *dis*, are feminine—as *glans* (acorn), gen. *glandis*; *frons* (foliage), gen. *frondis*; *juglans* (walnut), gen. *juglandis*.

29. Nouns in *bs* have the stem ending in *b*, *s* being only the sign of the nominative, so that the genitive ends in *bis*; their gender is feminine—as *urbs* (town), gen. *urbis*. So also the adjective *caelebs*, gen. *caelibis*.

30. Nouns in *ps* are formed from a stem ending in *p*, *s* being only the sign of the nominative. The *ps* is usually preceded by *e*, a euphonic change for *i*; e.g. *daps* (fem. food), gen. *dapis*. The following are used both as masculine and feminine:—*adeps* (fat), gen. *adipis*; *forceps* (forceps), gen. *forcipis*. In like manner are declined all adjectives in *ceps*, which are derived from *capio*—as *princeps* (though *auceps* makes *aucūpis*); while those derived from *caput*—as *anceps*, *praeceps*, *biceps*, and *triceps*, make the genitive in *cipitis*—as *ancipitis*, *praecipitis*, &c.

31. The only word in *ms* is the feminine *hiems* (winter), gen. *hiemis*. There is likewise only one in *ls*—*puls* (pap), gen. *pultis*.
32. Nouns in *rs* have the stem ending in *t*, which has been omitted before *s*. They are feminine—as *ars* (art), gen. *artis*; but *Mars* (for *Mavors*) is of course masculine. In like manner are declined the adjectives in *ers*—as *iners*, gen. *inertis*.
33. The only nouns in *t* are *caput* (head) and its compounds *occiput* and *sinciput*, which are all neuters, *u* being only a euphonic change for *i*; the genitives are *capitis*, *occipitis*, *sincipitis*.
34. Nouns in *x*, preceded by a consonant, are feminine, and their stem ends in *o*—as *arx* (citadel), gen. *arcis*; *falx* (sickle), gen. *falcis*. Those ending in *unx* (derived from *uncia*) are masculine—as *deunx* (eleven-twelfths of an *as*), so also *quincunx*, *septunx*. *Calx* (limestone) and *lynx* (lynx) are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine.

PECULIAR FORMATION OF CERTAIN CASES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

44. Some words in *is*, which make their genitive in *is* without any increase, have in the accusative *im* instead of *em*.

This is the case commonly with *amussis*, a ruler; *buris*, trunk of a plough; *cucumis*, cucumber; *ravis*, hoarseness; *sitis*, thirst; *tussis*, cough; *vis*, force; and in the names of towns and rivers in *is*—as *Hispalis*, *Tiberis*, *Albis*, *Baetis*. The following have more frequently *im* than *em*:—*febris*, fever; *pelvis*, basin; *puppis*, stern of a ship; *restis*, rope; *turris*, tower; *securis*, axe; while *clavis*, key, *messis*, harvest, and *navis*, ship, have more frequently *em* than *im*.

45. Many words make the ablative singular in *i* instead of *e*, and some may have either termination.

(a.) The following have the ablative in *i* exclusively:—

1. All those words which make their accusative singular in *im* instead of *em*—as *amussis*, *buris*, *sitis*, &c. See No. 44.
2. All neuter nouns ending in the nominative singular in *e*, *i*, *al*, and *ar*—as *mare* (sea), abl. *mari*; *sinapi* (mustard), abl. *sinapi*; *calcar* (spur), abl. *calcari*; *animal*, abl. *animali*.

The neuter names of towns ending in *e* make their ablative invariably in *e*—as *Praeneste*, *Reate*, *Caere*.

3. All adjectives of two, as well as those of three terminations (those ending in *is*, *e*, and those in *er*, *is*, *e*)—as *facilis* and *facile*, which both make the ablative *facili*; *gracilis* and *gracile*, abl. *gracili*; *acer*, *acris*, and *acre*, abl. *acri*. The same is the case with all substantives in *is*, which were originally adjectives—as *familiaris*, friend; and *natalis*, birthday.

(b.) The following words make their ablative both in *e* and *i*:—

1. Those substantives which may form their accusative singular both in *em* and *im*—as *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *clavis*, *messis*, &c. But *restis* has always *reste*, and *securis* always *securi*.
2. All adjectives and participles which have only one termination for the three genders—as *prudens*, abl. *prudente* and *prudenti*; *amans*, abl. *amante* and *amanti*; *iners*, abl. *inerte* and *inerti*; *felix*, abl. *felice* and *felici*; *Arpinas*, abl. *Arpinate* and *Arpinati*.

3. All comparatives of adjectives—as *major* and *majus*, abl. *maiore* and *majori*, though the termination *e* is usually preferred.

46. All neuter substantives ending in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, make the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *ia* instead of *a*—as *mare* (sea), plur. *maria*; *animal*, plur. *animalia*; *calcar*, plur. *calcaria*.

The same is the case with the neuter of all adjectives and participles in the positive—as *elegans*, neut. plur. *elegantia*; *iners*, neut. plur. *inertia*; *animans*, neut. plur. *animantia*. *Vetus* alone has *vetera*, and *complures* (several) both *complura* and *compluria*.

47. The genitive plural of some words ends in *ium* instead of *um*. This is the case—

1. With substantives ending in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, but merely change the termination of the nominative into *is*—as *aedes*, house; *crinis*, hair; gen. plur. *aedium*, *crinium*.
2. With the following nouns, which should be remembered separately:—*imber*, rain; *linter*, boat; *venter*, belly; *uter*, bag; and *caro*, flesh; as *imbrium*, *linterium*, *ventrium*, *carnium*, &c.
3. With all monosyllabic nouns ending in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant—as *mons*, mountain; *arx*, citadel; *urbs*, town; which make *montium*, *arcium*, *urbium*. The same is the case with the following monosyllabic words:—*glis*, *lis*, *mas*, *mus*, *os* (gen. *ossis*), *vis*, *faux* (not used in the nom. sing.), *nix*, *nox*, and sometimes also *fraus*.
4. With all nouns ending in *ns* and *rs*, whether consisting of one or more syllables—as *cliens*, client; *cohors*, cohort; *amans*, loving; *solers*, industrious; gen. plur. *clentium*, *cohortium*, *amantium*, *solertium*. Those in *ns*, however, admit both *um* and *ium*. Those which are properly participles, when used as substantives, prefer *ium* to *um*—as *adolescens*, *sapiens*; gen. *adolescentium*, *sapientium*. *Parens*, however, has more frequently *parentum* than *parentium*.
5. With all neuter substantives ending in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, and in all those adjectives and participles which make their neuter plural in *ia*—as *animal*, gen. plur. *animalium*; *mare*, *marium*; *calcar*, *calcarium*; *acer*, *acris*, and *acre*, *acrium*; *facilis* and *facile*, *facilium*; *felix*, *felicium*; *elegans*, *elegantium*; *iners*, *inertium*.
6. With names of peoples ending in *is* and *as*—as *Quiris*, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*; gen. plur. *Quiritium*, *Arpinatium*, *Fidenatium*. The same is the case with the plurals *penates* (household gods), and *optimates* (nobles), which generally make their genitive in *ium*, but rarely in *um*. Other substantives in *as* also, as *civitas*, sometimes make their genitive in *ium*, though *um* is more usual.
7. The names of Roman festivals, which are neuter plurals ending in *alia*, make their genitive either in *ium*, according to the third declension, or in *orum*, according to the second—as *Floralia*, gen. *Floralium* or *Floraliorum*; *Bacchanalia*, gen. *Bacchanalium* or *Bacchanaliorum*. So also *ancile* (a shield fallen from heaven), and *vectigal* (revenue).

48. Greek neuter substantives in *ma* commonly make the dative and ablative plural in *is* instead of *ibus*—as *poëma* (a poem), dat. and abl. plur. *poëmatis* instead of *poëmatibus*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

49. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. The stem of words belonging to it ends in *u*, which is retained in all the cases. The vowel of the termination generally coalesces with *u* of the stem into *ū*, or one of the vowels is dropped.

Model Examples.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>fructū-s</i> , fruit.	Nom. <i>fructū-s</i> , fruits.
Gen. <i>fructū-s</i> .	Gen. <i>fructū-um</i> .
Dat. <i>fructū-i</i> .	Dat. <i>fructi-bus</i> .
Acc. <i>fructu-m</i> .	Acc. <i>fructū-s</i> .
Voc. <i>fructū-s</i> .	Voc. <i>fructū-s</i> .
Abl. <i>fructū</i> .	Abl. <i>fructū-bus</i> .

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>cornū</i> , horn.	Nom. <i>cornū-ā</i> , horns.
Gen. <i>cornū</i> (<i>cornū-s</i> .)	Gen. <i>cornū-um</i> .
Dat. <i>cornū</i> (<i>cornū-i</i> .)	Dat. <i>cornū-bus</i> .
Acc. <i>cornū</i> .	Acc. <i>cornū-ā</i> .
Voc. <i>cornū</i> .	Voc. <i>cornū-ā</i> .
Abl. <i>cornū</i> .	Abl. <i>cornū-bus</i> .

Exercises.

Actus, act; *cursus*, course; *gradus*, step; *lusus*, play; *magistratus*, magistracy; *motus*, movement; *sensus*, sense; *sumptus*, expenditure; *vultus*, countenance.

The following are the only neuters:—*genu*, knee; *gelu*, cold; *veru*, a spit, broach; and *pecu* (the same as *pecus*, *ōris*, or *ūdis*), cattle.

The dative and ablative plural of the following words end in *ūbus* instead of *ibus*:—*acus*, needle; *arcus*, arch; *lacus*, lake; *quercus*, oak; *specus*, cave; *pecu*, cattle; *artus*, limb; *partus*, birth; *tribus*, tribe; and *veru*, spit. *Portus* (harbour) has both *portibus* and *portubus*.

The word *domus* (a house) is declined in the following manner:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>domūs</i> .	Nom. <i>domūs</i> .
Gen. <i>domūs</i> .	Gen. <i>domūum</i> or <i>domōrum</i> .
Dat. <i>domūi</i> (rarely <i>domo</i> .)	Dat. <i>domūbus</i> .
Acc. <i>domum</i> .	Acc. <i>domōs</i> (rarely <i>domūs</i> .)
Voc. <i>domūs</i> .	Voc. <i>domūs</i> .
Abl. <i>domō</i> (rarely <i>domu</i> .)	Abl. <i>domūbus</i> .

The form *domi* is only used in the sense of 'at home.'

50. Words of the fourth declension ending in *us* are masculine; those which end in *u* are neuters without exception.

The following in *us*, however, are feminine:—*acus*, needle; *anus*, old woman; *colus*, distaff; *domus*, house; *manus*, hand; *nurus*, daughter-in-law; *penus*, provision; *porticus*, portico; *quercus*, oak; *tribus*, tribe; *socrus*, mother-in-law; and sometimes also *specus*, a cave. The two plural nouns, *idus* (gen. *iduum*), the 13th or 15th day of a month; and *quinquatrus* (gen. *quinquattruum*), a certain Roman festival, are likewise feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

51. The fifth declension is, as the fourth, only a modification of the third. The stem of words belonging to it ends in *e*, to which *s* is added, to form the nominative. The words of this declension are few, and the genitive is formed by changing *es* of the nominative into *ei*.

Model Examples.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>rē-s</i> , a thing.	Nom.	<i>rē-s</i> , things.
Gen.	<i>rē-i</i> .	Gen.	<i>rē-rum</i> .
Dat.	<i>rē-i</i> .	Dat.	<i>rē-bus</i> .
Acc.	<i>rē-m</i> .	Acc.	<i>rē-s</i> .
Voc.	<i>rē-s</i> .	Voc.	<i>rē-s</i> .
Abl.	<i>rē</i> .	Abl.	<i>rē-bus</i> .

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>diē-s</i> , day.	Nom.	<i>diē-s</i> , days.
Gen.	<i>diē-i</i> .	Gen.	<i>diē-rum</i> .
Dat.	<i>diē-i</i> .	Dat.	<i>diē-bus</i> .
Acc.	<i>diē-m</i> .	Acc.	<i>diē-s</i> .
Voc.	<i>diē-s</i> .	Voc.	<i>diē-s</i> .
Abl.	<i>diē</i> .	Abl.	<i>diē-bus</i> .

Exercises.

Species, appearance; *spes*, hope; *acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, image; *facies*, face; *series*, series.

The words *dies* and *res* are the only nouns of this declension which have the plural complete. Nearly all the others are used only in the singular—as *caries*, rottenness; *fides*, faith; *macies*, leanness; *rabies*, madness; *scabies*, itch; *perniciēs*, destruction; *superficies*, surface.

52. All words of the fifth declension are feminine except *dies*, which in the singular is either masculine or feminine, but in

the plural masculine only. Its compound *meridies* (mid-day) is masculine only.

PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION—DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR
DECLENSION.

53. There are a few compound words in which each of the two elements is declined according to its peculiar declension—as *respublica* (republic), gen. *reipublicae* (the first word belonging to the fifth, and the second to the first declension); *jusjurandum* (oath), gen. *jurisjurandi* (the first word belonging to the third, and the second to the second declension.)

54. Proper names, and such common nouns as express a thing or an idea in its totality, without regard to the various objects in which the idea is manifested, are generally used only in the singular, in Latin as well as in other languages—as *justitia*, justice; *humanitas*, humanity; *senectus*, old age; *fames*, hunger; *quies*, rest; *plebs* and *vulgus*, common people; *supellex*, furniture; *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron; *triticum*, wheat; *oleum*, oil; *sanguis*, blood.

55. Some words are used only in the plural, either because they designate a number of individual things or persons—as *maiores*, ancestors; or because they originally conveyed the idea of repetition, or of a thing consisting of several parts—as *arma* (gen. *armorum*), armour; *fides* (gen. *fidium*), lyre. The following notes contain classified lists of the principal words of this kind:—

The following, which denote living beings, are used only in the plural:—

<i>liberi</i> , children.	<i>inferi</i> , inhabitants of Hades.
<i>gemini</i> , twins.	<i>superi</i> , inhabitants of Olympus.
<i>maiores</i> , ancestors.	<i>coelites</i> , inhabitants of heaven.
<i>posterī</i> , descendants.	<i>penates</i> , household gods.
<i>primores</i> and <i>proceres</i> , the principal persons or chieftains.	<i>manes</i> , spirits of the dead.
	<i>excubiae</i> , outposts or sentinels.

If it is to be specified that only an individual is meant, it must be expressed by 'one of the children,' 'one of the ancestors,' &c.—as *unus liberorum*, *unus e majoribus*, &c.

The following denote parts of the human body:—

<i>artūs</i> , limbs.	<i>exta</i> , <i>intestina</i> , and <i>viscera</i> , the intestines.
<i>cani</i> (properly an adjective, to which <i>capilli</i> is understood), gray hair.	<i>ilia</i> , the loins.
	<i>praecordia</i> , midriff.

The following denote things which were conceived by the Romans as consisting of several parts:—

arma, armour.
armamenta, tackling.
balneae, a bathing-house.
cancelli, balusters or rails.
casses, a hunter's net.
clathri, railing.
cunae, *cunabula*, and *incunabula*, cradle.
exuviae, spoil.
fides, lyre.

fori, a row of seats.
loculi, repository.
manubiae, booty.
moenia, wall of a town.
phalærae, trappings.
salinae, salt-works.
scopae, broom.
seses, brier.
spolia, spoils or booty.
virgulta, bush.

Names of days and festivals:—

calendae, the first day of a month.
nonae, the fifth or seventh day of a month.
idūs, the thirteenth or fifteenth of a month.

feriae, a holiday.
nundinae, a market-day.
Bacchanalia, *Saturnalia*, *Floralia*, *Ambarvalia*, &c. all of which are names of Roman festivals.

The following must be noticed separately:—

ambāges, a round-about way.
argutiae, witticism.
blanditiae, flattery.
crepundia, toy.
deliciae, delight.
dirae, curse.
divitiae, wealth.
epulae, meal.
exsequiae, funeral.

fasti, calendar.
grates, thanks.
illecebrae, bait.
induciae, truce.
inferiae, sacrifice to the dead.
inimicitiae, enmity.
insidiae, ambushade.
nuptiae, wedding.
tenebrae, darkness.

Some words denote in the singular, as usual, a single object; but in the plural express both a plurality of such objects and an aggregate of the same or similar objects, which in many cases we express in English by a substantive in the singular—as *littera*, a letter of the alphabet; *litterae*, both letters of the alphabet, and a letter or epistle; *auxilium*, aid; *auxilia*, auxiliary troops.

The following list contains the principal words of this kind:—

SINGULAR.

aedes, a temple.
aqua, water.
carcer, prison.
castrum (more commonly *castrum*), a fort.
comitium, a part of the forum.
copia, abundance.
facultas, power to do a thing.
finis, end.

PLURAL.

aedes, temples, and a house.
aquae, waters, and medicinal springs.
carceres, prisons, and the barriers of a race-course.
castra, a camp.
comitia, the assembly of the people.
copiae, provisions or troops.
facultates, property.
fines, boundary or territory.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>fortuna</i> , fortune.	<i>fortunae</i> , gifts of fortune.
<i>gratia</i> , favour.	<i>gratiae</i> , thanks.
<i>hortus</i> , garden.	<i>horti</i> , gardens and pleasure-grounds, or country seat.
<i>impedimentum</i> , an obstacle.	<i>impedimenta</i> , obstacles, and baggage of an army.
<i>ludus</i> , a game or pastime.	<i>ludi</i> , games, or a public exhibition on the stage or in the circus.
<i>nares</i> , nostril.	<i>nares</i> , the nose.
<i>natalis</i> (scil. <i>dies</i>), birthday.	<i>natales</i> , a man's descent or origin.
<i>opera</i> , work.	<i>operae</i> , labourers.
<i>opis</i> (gen. from the obsolete <i>ops</i>), help.	<i>opes</i> , wealth, power.
<i>pars</i> , part.	<i>partes</i> , parts, and a party.
<i>rostrum</i> , a beak or pointed front of a ship.	<i>rostra</i> , a place in the Roman forum, which was adorned with the beaks of ships, and from which the orators addressed the people.
<i>sal</i> , salt.	<i>sales</i> , wit.
<i>tabula</i> , a board or table.	<i>tabulae</i> , boards, and a register.

56. A few nouns do not admit of any inflection; hence they are termed *indeclinable*.

Words of this kind are the names of the letters of the alphabet, both in Latin and Greek—as *alpha*, *beta*, *gamma*. To these must be added the following:—*fas*, divine right; *nefas*, wrong; *instar*, weight, importance, validity; *mane*, the morning; *caepe*, onion; *gummi*, gum; *pondo*, pound weight.

57. Some nouns capable of inflection have not all the cases, and are therefore termed *defectives*. The following is a classified list of the principal words of this kind:—

1. The nominative is wanting to the following words, of which we shall give only the genitive, though the other oblique cases also occur:—
Dapis, food (from *daps*); *dicionis*, dominion (from *dicio*); *frugis*, fruit (from *frux*); *internecionis*, destruction (from *internecio*); *opis*, help (from *ops*); *pollinis*, fine flour (from *pollen*); *stipis*, little money (from *stipes*).
2. The following words occur only in certain cases of the singular:—
Fors (chance), in the nominative and ablative *forte*, by chance or accidentally. *Impētis* and *impēte*, the genitive and ablative of an obsolete nominative *impes* (vehemence), for which *impetus* is commonly used. *Lues* (an epidemic) occurs only in the nominative, accusative (*luem*), and ablative (*lue*).
3. The following occur only in certain cases of the singular and plural:—

From the obsolete *sordes* (filth), we have only the accusative and ablative singular, *sordem* and *sorde*; but the plural is complete. From the obsolete *vepres* (a thorn-bush), we have only the

accusative and ablative singular, *veprem* and *vepre*; but the plural is complete. Of the obsolete *vici*s or *vix* (change), there exist the genitive, accusative, and ablative singular, *vici*s, *vicem*, *vix*; the plural, except the genitive, is complete.

4. The following words occur in the singular only in the ablative, and, generally speaking, only in poetry:—

Ambage, *compède*, *fauce*, *obice*; *prece*, *verbere*. The last two occur also in prose.

5. The following words also are used only in the ablative singular:—

Sponte (impulse), as *mea sponte*, of my own accord; *sua sponte*, of his own accord. A number of verbal substantives of the fourth declension, occurring always joined either to a genitive or to a possessive pronoun—as *jussu populi*, by command of the people; *mandatu Caesaris*, by the order of Caesar; *rogatu meo*, at my request. So also *natu*, joined with *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*, and the expressions in *promptu*, in *procinctu*, *concessu*, *permissu*, *efflagitatu*, and others.

58. Some words have in the nominative two or three different terminations, in consequence of which they may belong to different declensions, and sometimes also are of different genders—as *eventus* and *eventum*, an event; *jugulus* and *jugulum*, the throat; *luxuria* and *luxuries*, luxury.

1. In the second declension, some masculines in *us* have at the same time a neuter form in *um*—as *callus* and *callum*, a wart; *commentarius* and *commentarium*, a memoir; *jugulus* and *jugulum*, throat; *lupinus* and *lupinum*, lupine; *porrus* and *porrum*, leek; *cubitus* and *cubitum*, the elbow, or a cubit.
2. The following words belong either to the first or to the second declension, according to their terminations:—*menda* and *mendum*, a fault; *vespera* and *vesper*, evening (the ablative, however, is commonly *vespere* or *vesperi*, according to the third declension; while *vesper*, the evening star, belongs entirely to the second); *aranea* and *araneus*, a spider; *essedum* and *esseda*, a travelling carriage.
3. The following words belong either to the first or to the fifth declension, according as they end in *ia* or *ies*:—*barbaria* or *barbaries*, a barbarous country; *mollitia* or *mollities*, effeminacy; *luxuria* or *luxuries*, luxury; *materia* or *materies*, matter, though the latter usually signifies timber.
4. Some verbal substantives of the fourth declension in *us* have a second form in *um*, following the second declension—as *eventus* and *eventum*, an occurrence; *suggestus* and *suggestum*, the hustings.
5. The following merit special notice:—

Plebs or *plebes*, gen. *plebis* and *plebei*, or contracted, *plebi*; the former of the third, and the latter of the fifth declension.

Jugerum (an acre), of the second declension, has certain forms belonging to the third—namely, ablative *jugere*, genitive plural *jugerum*, and dative and ablative *jugeribus*.

Fames (hunger) belongs to the third declension, but has in the ablative always *famē*, according to the fifth, instead of *famē*.

Requies (rest), gen. *requietis*, makes the accusative and ablative both *requietem*, *requiete* and *requiem*, *requiē*.

Gausdpe, *gausd̄pis*, and *gausd̄pum* (a piece of woollen cloth), are neuter; the first two forms belong to the third, and the third to the second declension; but there also exist the feminine *gausapa* of the first, and the masculine *gausapes*, gen. *is*, of the third declension.

Praesēpe, gen. *praesēpis* (a manger), is neuter; but *praesēpes*, gen. *praesēpis*, is feminine, and *praesēpium* is neuter.

Tapes, gen. *tapētis* (a carpet), is masculine; but *tapēle*, gen. *tapētis* and *tapētum*, are neuter.

Ilia (a neut. plur.), the loins, makes its genitive plural *ilium* or *iliorum*, and the dative and ablative *ilibus* only.

6. Some words have not only different terminations in the different cases, but the stem itself is different; so that they may be regarded as different words; for example—

Femur (thigh), gen. *femōris* and *fem̄nis* (from the obsolete *femen*.)

Jecur (liver), gen. *jecoris*; but also *jecinōris*, *jocinōris*, and *jocinēris*.

Juventus and *juventa* (youth), gen. *juventutis* and *juventae*, while *Juventas* (the goddess of youth) makes *Juventatis*.

Senectus and *senecta* (old age), gen. *senectutis* and *senectae*; but the latter, like *juventae*, is used only in poetry.

Pecus (cattle), when feminine, makes the genitive *pecūdis*; when neuter, *pecōris*. There is also a plural *pecua*, dat. and abl. *pecubus*.

Penus (provisions), gen. *penōris*, plur. *penōra*; but it is also a feminine of the fourth declension, gen. *penūs*, and a neuter, *penum*, of the second. The two last forms do not occur in the plural.

Colluvio and *colluvies* (a mass of filth flowing together), are both feminine; the former of the third, and the latter of the fifth declension.

Scorpio and *scorpius* (a scorpion), are both masculine; the former of the third, and the latter of the second declension.

59. Some substantives, though they have only one form in the singular, have in the plural either two forms of different genders, or one form only, which, however, differs in gender from the singular:—

Jocus (a joke), plur. *joci* and *joca*.

Locus (a place), plur. *loca*, places, but *loci*, passages in books: this distinction, however, is not always observed.

Carbasus (fem. linen), plur. *carbasa*, sail.

Coelum (heaven), plur. *coeli*.

Frenum (bit), plur. *freni* and *frena*.

Rastrum (a hatchet), plur. *rastri* and *rastra*.

Ostrea (oyster), plur. *ostreae* and *ostrea*.

Sibilus (a hissing), plur. *sibili*, and in poetry *sibila*.

Tartarus (the lower world), plur. in poetry *Tartara*.

Balneum (bath), plur. *balneae*, a public bath-house.

Epulum (a solemn feast), plur. *epulae*, a meal.

Vas (a vessel) belongs to the third declension, but in the plural follows the second, *vasa*, *vasorum*, *vasis*.

60. The only substantives really irregular in declension are

Jupiter, which makes its genitive *Jovis*, the remaining cases being regularly formed from *Jovis*; *caro* (flesh, meat) makes its genitive *carnis*; *senex* (an old man), *sēnis*; *nix* (snow), *nivis*; *supellex* (furniture), gen. *supellectilis*; and *vis* (violence), though it makes the accusative and ablative *vim* and *vi*, yet has the plural *vires*, *virium*, *viribus*, &c.

TERMINATIONS AND DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

61. Adjectives denote qualities, peculiarities, and properties of persons or things, when they are not regarded as independent existences, but as attached to persons or things. In *fortis miles* (a brave soldier), the word *fortis* is an adjective, denoting the quality of bravery as connected with or attached to the soldier; but *fortitudo* (bravery), which likewise denotes a quality, is not an adjective, but a substantive, because the quality expressed by *fortitudo* is regarded as an independent existence, or abstract quality.

62. Adjectives are commonly joined to substantives, with which they agree in gender, number, and case. In order to make an adjective agree in gender, it must have three different terminations corresponding to the three genders. This, however, is not always the case, for some adjectives have only two terminations to indicate gender—one for the masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter; while a large number have only one termination for all the genders.

What is here said of adjectives holds good also of participles, pronouns, and some numerals, which, so far as their form is concerned, must be regarded as adjectives.

63. There are only two classes of adjectives which have three distinct terminations for the three genders—namely, those in *us* and *er*, both forming the feminine in *a* and the neuter in *um*—as *bonus* (good), fem. *bona*, neut. *bonum*; *amatus* (beloved), fem. *amata*, neut. *amatum*; *liber* (free), fem. *libera*, neut. *liberum*; *niger* (black), fem. *nigra*, neut. *nigrum*. To these must be added the adjective *satur* (full), fem. *satura*, neut. *saturum*.

Those adjectives which retain *e* before *r* in the genitive singular, also retain it in the feminine and neuter—as in *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*; while those which throw it out in the genitive also drop it in the feminine and neuter—as *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*.

64. The masculine and neuter of these adjective forms follow the second declension, but the feminine in *a* the first.

Respecting those ending in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, which make their genitive

in all genders in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, though they are regular in all other respects, see page 11.

65. There are thirteen adjectives in *er* which make their feminine in *is*, and the neuter in *e*, all of which forms follow the third declension. The three genders, however, can be distinguished only in the nominative singular, since the declension of the masculine is quite the same as that of the feminine. These adjectives are :—

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>acer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> (gen. <i>acris</i>), sharp.
<i>alacer</i> ,	<i>alacris</i> ,	<i>alacre</i> (gen. <i>alacris</i>), cheerful.
<i>campester</i> ,	<i>campestris</i> ,	<i>campestre</i> (gen. <i>campestris</i>), belonging to a plain or field.
<i>celeber</i> ,	<i>celebris</i> ,	<i>celebre</i> (gen. <i>celebris</i>), famous.
<i>celer</i> ,	<i>celeris</i> ,	<i>celere</i> (gen. <i>celeris</i>), swift.
<i>equester</i> ,	<i>equestris</i> ,	<i>equestre</i> (gen. <i>equestris</i>), equestrian.
<i>paluster</i> ,	<i>palustris</i> ,	<i>palustre</i> (gen. <i>palustris</i>), marshy.
<i>pedester</i> ,	<i>pedestris</i> ,	<i>pedestre</i> (gen. <i>pedestris</i>), on foot.
<i>puter</i> ,	<i>putris</i> ,	<i>putre</i> (gen. <i>putris</i>), rotten.
<i>saluber</i> ,	<i>salubris</i> ,	<i>salubre</i> (gen. <i>salubris</i>), wholesome.
<i>silvester</i> ,	<i>silvestris</i> ,	<i>silvestre</i> (gen. <i>silvestris</i>), woody.
<i>terrester</i> ,	<i>terrestris</i> ,	<i>terrestre</i> (gen. <i>terrestris</i>), earthy.
<i>volucer</i> ,	<i>volucris</i> ,	<i>volucre</i> (gen. <i>volucris</i>), swift, winged.

66. Adjectives in *is*, and comparatives in *ior*, have only two terminations — one for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter. Those in *is* make their neuter in *e*, and comparatives in *ior* make their neuter in *ius*—as *levis* (masc. and fem.), *leve* (neut.), light; *pulchrior* (masc. and fem.), *pulchrius* (neut.), handsomer. All the forms of these adjectives belong to the third declension; both *levis* and *leve* making their genitive *levis*, and *pulchrior* as well as *pulchrius* make *pulchrioris*.

There are twelve adjectives which have double forms; one in *us*, *a*, *um*, and the other in *is*, *e*—namely :—

Bijugus, *a*, *um*, and *bijugis*, *e*, with two yokes.

Eranimus, *a*, *um*, and *eranimis*, *e*, dead.

Hilarus, *a*, *um*, and *hilaris*, *e*, cheerful.

Imbecillus, *a*, *um*, and *imbecillis*, *e*, weak, imbecile.

Imberbus, *a*, *um*, and *imberbis*, *e*, without a beard.

Inermus, *a*, *um*, and *inermis*, *e*, unarmed.

Infrenus, *a*, *um*, and *infrenis*, *e*, without a bridle.

Multijugus, *a*, *um*, and *multijugis*, *e*, with many yokes.

Quadrijugus, *a*, *um*, and *quadrijugis*, *e*, with four yokes.

Semiermus, *a*, *um*, and *semiermis*, *e*, half-armed.

Semianimus, *a*, *um*, and *semtanimis*, *e*, half-dead.

Unanimus, *a*, *um*, and *unanimis*, *e*, unanimous.

67. All other adjectives have only one termination for all genders, and all belong to the third declension. For example, *sapiens*, wise; *felix*, happy; *legens*, reading; *concors*, unanimous; *atrox*, atrocious; *locuples*, rich; *memor*, remembering.

But although in these adjectives the neuter is like the two other genders, still it differs from them by having, according to the general rule, the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and by having the same cases of the plural ending in *ia*; hence the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative of *prudens* is *prudens*, and the same cases in the plural are all *prudentia*. *Vetus* (old), gen. *veteris*, alone makes the plural *vetera*.

68. The following adjectives are indeclinable:—

Frugi (discreet); hence *homo frugi*, *hominis frugi*, *homines frugi*, &c. *Nequam* (good for nothing) occurs only as a neuter in connection with the verbs *esse* and *habere*.

Opus and *necesse* (necessary) occur only in connection with *esse*.

Praesto (ready or at hand) occurs only with *esse*.

Semis (and a half) occurs only in connection with numerals; and the conjunction *et* (and) being omitted, it must be rendered by 'and a half'—as *recipe uncias quatuor semis*, take four ounces and a half.

Potis, neut. *pote* (able), occurs only in the nominative with the verb *esse*, with which it is contracted into *posse* (to be able.)

Damnus (condemned) is used only as a law-term in connection with the imperatives *esto* and *sunto*.

69. The following adjectives are deficient either in cases or numbers:—

Of the feminine *cetera*, neut. *ceterum* (the other), the masculine nominative *ceterus* is not used; but all the other cases both of the singular and plural are common.

The genitive *primoris* (of the first) has no nominative; but in the plural it is common in the sense of 'chiefs' or 'leaders.'

Of *sontis* (guilty), *puberis* (full-grown), and *seminēcis* (half-dead), the nominative *sons*, *pubes*, and *seminex*, do not occur.

The words *exlex*, lawless; *exspes*, hopeless, occur in the nominative only.

Pauci (a few) and *plerique* (many, or the greater number) are used only in the plural; but the singular sometimes occurs in connection with collective substantives—as *pleraque nobilitas*, the greater part of the nobility; *pleraque juvenus*, the greater part of the youths; *plerusque exercitus*, the greater part of the army. *Plerique* has no genitive, but that of *plurimi* supplies its place.

The vocatives *macte* and *macti* are the only forms of this adjective that occur.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

70. As adjectives denote qualities, and as the same quality existing in two different persons or things may be in a higher degree in the one than in the other; and again, as among many persons or things possessing the same quality one may possess it in the highest degree, every language has some means of expressing these degrees. Their number is three—the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*. The positive is the adjective in its fundamental form—as *bonus*, good; *felix*, happy; *fortis*, brave.

71. When a comparison is instituted between two persons or things in regard to a quality they have in common, or when the same quality existing in the same object is compared with itself at different times, and when the result of the comparison is that the quality exists in one object in a higher degree than in the other, or at one time in a higher degree than at another, the comparison is expressed by the comparative form: *e.g.*, he is *wiser* than his brother; he is *wiser* now than he ever has been.

72. When a comparison is instituted between more than two objects in regard to a quality which they have in common, and when the result of the comparison is that one possesses the quality in a higher degree than the others, or in the highest degree, the comparison is expressed by the superlative form: *e.g.*, he is the *most diligent* of all my pupils; Socrates was the *wisest* of all the Greeks.

The Latin language frequently employs the comparative in an elliptic manner, where we should say either 'too' or 'rather'—as *doctior*, 'more learned'—namely, than should be; that is, 'rather learned,' or 'too learned.' In like manner the Latin language is very partial to the use of the superlative where we simply say 'very'—as *doctissimus* may either mean 'the most learned man' or 'a very learned man.'

73. The comparative degree is formed in Latin by the termination *ior* (for the masculine and feminine) and *ius* (for the neuter) being added to the stem of the adjective, such as it appears in any of the oblique cases—as *opulentus*, comp. *opulent-ior*, *ius*; *sapiens*, comp. *sapient-ior*, *ius*; *sagax*, comp. *sagac-ior*, *ius*; *liber*, comp. *liber-ior*, *ius*; *pulcher*, comp. *pulchr-ior*, *ius*; *levis*, comp. *lev-ior*, *ius*.

74. Those adjectives in *er* which lose *e* in the oblique cases, lose it also in the comparative—as in *pulcher*, *pulchrior*. *Sinister* (left) alone has *sinisterior*, although its genitive is

sinistri. All comparatives follow the third declension, making their genitive in *ōris*.

75. The superlative is formed by adding the termination *issimus*, *a*, *um*, to the stem of the adjective, such as it appears in any of the oblique cases—as *opulentus*, sup. *opulent-issimus*, *a*, *um*; *sapiens*, sup. *sapient-issimus*, *u*, *um*; *sagax*, sup. *sagacissimus*, *a*, *um*; *levis*, sup. *lev-issimus*, *a*, *um*.

76. All adjectives ending in *er* make the superlative by adding *rimus*, *a*, *um*, to the masculine nominative of the positive—as *pulcher*, sup. *pulcherrimus*; *liber*, sup. *liberrimus*; *acer*, sup. *acerrimus*; *celeber*, sup. *celeberrimus*.

Vetus (old, gen. *veter-is*) likewise makes its superlative *veterrimus*, and *nuperus* (late, from *nuper*), *nuperrimus*. *Maturus* (early) has two forms in the superlative, *maturissimus* and *maturrimus*.

77. The following adjectives in *lis*—*facilis* (easy), *difficilis* (difficult), *gracilis* (slender), *humilis* (humble), *similis* (similar), and *dissimilis* (dissimilar)—form their superlatives by adding *limus* to the stem—as *facil-limus*, *difficil-limus*, *simil-limus*, &c. But all other adjectives in *lis* form their superlative in the regular manner—as *utilis*, sup. *util-issimus*.

78. Adjectives ending in *dīcus*, *fīcus*, and *vōlus* (from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, and *volo*), make the comparative by changing *us* into *entior*, and the superlative by changing *us* into *entissimus*, just as if the positive ended in *ens*—as *maledicus* (slandering), comp. *maledicentior*, sup. *maledicentissimus*; *munificus* (munificent), comp. *munificentior*, sup. *munificentissimus*; *malevolus* (ill-disposed), comp. *malevolentior*, sup. *malevolentissimus*.

79. The masculine and neuter of all superlatives follow the second declension, and the feminine the first.

80. Some adjectives form their degrees of comparison in an irregular manner, or rather from obsolete words and different stems:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bonus</i> , good,	<i>melior</i> , <i>iūs</i> ,	<i>optimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Malus</i> , bad,	<i>pejor</i> , <i>pejus</i> ,	<i>pessimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Magnus</i> , great,	<i>major</i> , <i>maius</i> ,	<i>maximus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Multus</i> , much,	<i>plus</i> (gen. <i>pluris</i>), plural, <i>plures</i> , <i>plura</i> .	<i>plurimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Parvus</i> , small,	<i>minor</i> , <i>minus</i> ,	<i>minimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Nequam</i> , good for nothing,	<i>nequior</i> , <i>iūs</i> ,	<i>nequissimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
<i>Frugi</i> , cheerful,	<i>frugalior</i> , <i>iūs</i> ,	<i>frugalissimus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .

Senex (an old man) and *juvenis* (a young man), although substantives, have their comparatives *senior* and *junior*, but no superlatives.

81. Some adjectives have two irregular forms of the superlative, and sometimes with a slight difference in meaning—as

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>exterus</i> , being without,	<i>exterior</i> , outer,	<i>extrēmus</i> and <i>extimū</i> s, the last.
<i>inferus</i> , being below,	<i>inferior</i> ,	<i>infimū</i> s, or contracted, <i>imū</i> s.
<i>superus</i> , being above,	<i>superior</i> ,	<i>supremū</i> s, the last in point of time, and <i>summū</i> s, the highest.
<i>posterus</i> , one who follows,	<i>posterior</i> ,	<i>postremū</i> s, the last, and <i>postimū</i> s, one born after his father's death.

82. There are some comparatives and superlatives to which there is no adjective in the positive, and which are generally derived from adverbs; and there are others which cannot be derived either from adjectives or from adverbs—namely,

Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>citerior</i> , situated on this side,	<i>citimū</i> s, from the adverb <i>citra</i> .
<i>ulterior</i> , placed beyond,	<i>ultimū</i> s, from the adverb <i>ultra</i> .
<i>interior</i> , interior,	<i>intimū</i> s, from the adverb <i>intus</i> .
<i>propior</i> , nearer,	<i>proximū</i> s, from the adverb <i>prope</i> .
<i>deterior</i> , inferior,	<i>detrinimū</i> s, the lowest.
<i>ocior</i> , quicker,	<i>ocissimū</i> s, from the Greek <i>ὀκίστος</i> .
<i>potior</i> , preferable,	<i>potissimū</i> s, from the obsolete <i>potis</i> .
<i>prior</i> , first of two,	<i>primū</i> s, from the adverb <i>prae</i> .
<i>sequior</i> , <i>sequius</i> , or <i>secius</i> , less good,	—— from the adverb <i>secus</i> .
<i>anterior</i> , being before another,	—— from the adverb <i>ante</i> .

The following adjectives have a superlative, but no comparative:—*diversus* (different), *diversissimū*s; *falsus* (false), *falsissimū*s; *inclitus* (famous), *inclitissimū*s; *novus* (new), *novissimū*s; *sacer* (sacred), *sacer-
rimū*s. *Vetus* has *veterrimū*s, but *vetustus*, which has the same meaning, furnishes the comparative *vetustior*, and has also a superlative *vetus-
tissimū*s.

83. There are many adjectives which cannot have any degrees of comparison at all, because they denote qualities which cannot be conceived to exist in a higher or lower degree than that in which they commonly appear.

This is chiefly the case with those which denote the material of which something is made, origin, and a definite time—as *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, made of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *Romanus*, Roman; *paternus*, paternal; *hibernus*, wintery; *hodiernus*, belonging to this day; *vivus*, alive; *exanimis*, dead; *caecus*, blind; *sinister*, left-handed; *ater*, black; *surdus*, deaf; *jejunus*, not having breakfasted; and many others.

Many adjectives do not form their degrees of comparison in the ordinary way, but by adding the adverbs *magis* (more) and *maxime* (most) to the positive—as *idoneus* (fit), comp. *magis idoneus*, sup. *maxime idoneus*. This is the case—

1. With all adjectives ending in *us* in which the *us* is preceded by a vowel—as *idoneus*, suitable; *dubius*, doubtful; *necessarius*, necessary.
2. With many adjectives which are compounds of verbs or substantives, such as those ending in *ger* and *fer* (from *gero* and *fero*), and many others—as *ignivomus*, fire-spitting; *degener*, degenerate; *discolor*, of different colours; *inops*, poor; *magnanimus*, generous. Those ending in *dicus*, *ficus*, and *volus*, however, as well as those compounded with *ars*, *mens*, and *cor*, may have their regular degrees—as *iners*, *sollers*, *demens*, *amens*, *concors*, *discors*, *vecors*.
3. The following adjectives have no regular degrees:—*almus*, nourishing; *caducus*, falling or fragile; *calvus*, bald; *curvus*, crooked; *ferus*, wild; *gnarus*, knowing; *lacer* and *mutilus*, mutilated; *lassus*, tired; *mediocri*, middling; *memor*, mindful; *mirus*, wonderful; *navus*, industrious; *rudis*, rude; *trux*, fierce.

Sometimes an adjective, instead of being put in the superlative, has *per* prefixed to it—as *permagnus*, *percommodus*. Others take *prae* in a similar sense—as *praegepidus* (very cold.) Adjectives thus compounded with *per* or *prae* have no degrees of comparison, except *praeclarus* (illustrious), which is treated as a simple adjective, and accordingly has its degrees *praeclarior* and *praeclarissimus*.

NUMERALS.

84. Most numerals are in reality adjectives denoting number—as *unus homo*, one man; *primus homo*, the first man; *terni milites*, soldiers by threes together; *duplex numerus*, double number. One class of numerals only belongs to adverbs—as *semel*, once; *bis*, twice; *ter*, thrice. All numerals may be divided into six classes:—

1. *Cardinal numerals*, or those which simply denote the number of objects, and answer to the question 'how many?'—as one, two, three.
2. *Ordinal numerals*, or those indicating the order or succession of objects—as the first, second, third.
3. *Distributive numerals*, or those which denote how many each time—as *terni*, three each time.
4. *Multiplicative numerals*, denoting how many fold a thing is—as *triplex*, threefold.
5. *Proportional numerals*, denoting how many times more one thing is than another—as *triplum*, three times as much.
6. *Adverbial numerals*, denoting how many times a thing occurs—as *quater*, four times.

85. The first three cardinal numerals—*unus*, *ae*, *um* (one); *duo*, *duae*, *duo* (two); and *tres*, *tria*—are declinable; the rest, up to two hundred, are indeclinable; but from two hundred up to a thousand they are declinable, and have a distinct termination for each gender. *Mille*, one thousand, is an indeclinable adjective, but it has a plural, *millia*, which is declinable, and used as a substantive.

The following table contains the principal cardinal numerals, according to which all others may be formed :—

1.	I. <i>unus, una, unum.</i>
2.	II. <i>duo, duae, duo.</i>
3.	III. <i>tres, tria.</i>
4.	IIII or IV. <i>quatuor.</i>
5.	V. <i>quinque.</i>
6.	VI. <i>sex.</i>
7.	VII. <i>septem.</i>
8.	VIII. <i>octo.</i>
9.	IX. or VIIII. <i>novem.</i>
10.	X. <i>decem.</i>
11.	XI. <i>undecim.</i>
12.	XII. <i>duodecim.</i>
13.	XIII. <i>tredecim, or decem et tres (tria), or tres (tria) et decem.</i>
14.	XIV. <i>quatuordecim.</i>
15.	XV. <i>quindecim.</i>
16.	XVI. <i>sedecim, sexdecim, or decem et sex.</i>
17.	XVII. <i>decem et septem, or septemdecim.</i>
18.	XVIII. <i>decem et octo, or better duodeviginti.</i>
19.	XIX. <i>decem et novem, or better undeviginti.</i>
20.	XX. <i>viginti.</i>
21.	XXI. <i>unus (a, um) et viginti, or viginti unus (a, um.)</i>
22.	XXII. <i>duo (duae) et viginti, or viginti duo (duae.)</i>
23.	XXIII. <i>tres (tria) et viginti, or viginti tres (tria.)</i>
24.	XXIV. <i>quatuor et viginti, or viginti quatuor.</i>
28.	XXVIII. <i>duodetriginta, more rarely octo et viginti, or viginti octo.</i>
29.	XXIX. <i>undetriginta, more rarely novem et viginti, or</i>
30.	XXX. <i>triginta. [viginti novem.</i>
31.	XXXI. <i>unus (a, um) et triginta, or triginta unus (a, um.)</i>
40.	XL. <i>quadraginta.</i>
50.	L. <i>quingenta.</i>
60.	LX. <i>sexaginta.</i>
70.	LXX. <i>septuaginta.</i>
80.	LXXX. <i>octoginta.</i>
90.	XC. <i>nonaginta.</i>
99.	IC. or XCIX. <i>nonaginta novem, or novem et nonaginta, or</i>
100.	C. <i>centum. [undecentum.</i>
101.	CI. <i>centum et unus (a, um), or centum unus.</i>
102.	CII. <i>centum et duo (duae), or centum duo.</i>
200.	CC. <i>ducenti, ae, a.</i>
300.	CCC. <i>trecenti, ae, a.</i>
400.	CCCC. <i>quadringenti, ae, a.</i>
500.	D. or IO. <i>quingenti, ae, a.</i>
600.	DC. <i>sexcenti, ae, a.</i>
700.	DCC. <i>septingenti, ae, a.</i>
800.	DCCC. <i>octingenti, ae, a.</i>
900.	DCCCC. <i>nongenti, ae, a.</i>
1000.	M. or CIO. <i>mille.</i>
2000.	CIOCIO. or MM. <i>duo millia, or bis mille.</i>
3000.	CIOCIOCIO. or MMM. <i>tria millia, or ter mille.</i>

5000.	IOO. <i>quinque millia</i> , or <i>quinquies mille</i> .
10,000.	CCIOO. <i>decem millia</i> , or <i>decies mille</i> .
100,000.	CCCCIOOO. <i>centum millia</i> , or <i>centies mille</i> .

M seems to be the initial of *mille*. The other leading symbols are I = 1, V = 5, X = 10, L = 50, C = 100, IO or D = 500, M or CIO = 1000. In reading the Latin symbols, the following points must be observed:—

1. Two symbols of equal value are added together—as II = 2, CC = 200.
2. A symbol of less value before one of greater is subtracted—as IX = 9, XC = 90.
3. A symbol of less value after one of greater is added—as XI = 11, CX = 110.
4. Each inverted C (O) after the symbol IO (500), indicates that the latter must be multiplied by ten, so that IOO is 5000, and IOOO, 50,000.
5. When we place as many C's before I as there are inverted O's after it, we double the number—as IOO = 5000, but CCIOO = 10,000; again, IOOO = 50,000, but CCCIOOO = 100,000; and a million would accordingly be expressed by CCCCIOOOO.

86. *Unus*, *a*, *um*, is one of those adjectives which in all genders form the genitive in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; but in the other cases the masculine and neuter follow the second declension, and the feminine the first. (See p. 11.)

87. *Duo* and *tres* of course occur in the plural only, and are declined thus:—

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.
Nom. <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .	Nom. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
Gen. <i>duorum</i> ,	<i>duarum</i> ,	<i>duorum</i> .	Gen. <i>trium</i> ,	<i>trium</i> .
Dat. <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .	Dat. <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> .
Acc. <i>duos</i> (or <i>duo</i>),	<i>duas</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .	Acc. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
Abl. <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .	Abl. <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> .

Ambo, *ambae*, *ambo* (both) is declined like *duo*.

88. *Centum* itself is indeclinable, but *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*; *trecenti*, *ae*, *a*; *quadringenti*, &c. down to *nongenti*, are all plural adjectives, the masculine and neuter of which follow the second declension, and the feminine the first. *Mille* is commonly treated as an indeclinable adjective, and is accordingly joined to any case of a substantive; but it has a complete plural (*millia*, gen. *millium*, dat. *millibus*, &c.), which is regarded as a substantive of the neuter gender—as *duo millia*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *multa millia*, &c. and is accordingly followed by the genitive of the objects counted—as *tria millia militum*, 3000 soldiers.

89. The ordinal numerals are adjectives of three terminations (masculine *us*, feminine *a*, neuter *um*); and with the exception

of *primus* and *secundus*, they are all formed from the cardinal numerals.

The following table contains the principal ordinal numerals, according to which all the others may be formed:—

1. *primus*, the first.
2. *secundus* or *alter*, the second.
3. *tertius*, the third.
4. *quartus*, the fourth.
5. *quintus*, the fifth.
6. *sextus*, the sixth.
7. *septimus*, the seventh.
8. *octavus*, the eighth.
9. *nonus*, the ninth.
10. *decimus*, the tenth.
11. *undecimus*, the eleventh.
12. *duodecimus*, the twelfth, &c.
13. *tertius decimus*, rarely *decimus et tertius*.
14. *quartus decimus*, rarely *decimus et quartus*, &c.
15. *quintus decimus*.
16. *sextus decimus*.
17. *septimus decimus*.
18. *duodevicesimus*, rarely *octavus decimus*.
19. *undevicesimus*, rarely *nonus decimus*.
20. *vicesimus* (or *vigesimus*.)
21. *unus et vicesimus* (*una et vicesima*, *unum et vicesimum*), more rarely *primus et vicesimus*, or *vicesimus primus*.
22. *alter* (rarely *secundus*) *et vicesimus*, *vicesimus alter*, or *duo et*
23. *tertius et vicesimus*, or *vicesimus tertius*. [vicesimus.]
24. *quartus et vicesimus*, or *vicesimus quartus*, &c.
28. *duodetricesimus*, more rarely *octavus et vicesimus*, and *vicesimus octavus*.
29. *undetricesimus*, more rarely *nonus et vicesimus*, and *vicesimus nonus*.
30. *tricesimus*, or *trigesimus*.
31. *primus et tricesimus*, *tricesimus primus*, or *unus et tricesimus*.
(See above, 20.)
38. *duodequadragesimus*, more rarely *octavus et tricesimus*, or *tricesimus octavus*.
39. *undequadragesimus*, more rarely *nonus et tricesimus*, or *tricesimus*
40. *quadragesimus*. [nonus.]
50. *quingagesimus*.
60. *sexagesimus*.
70. *septuagesimus*.
80. *octogesimus*.
90. *nonagesimus*.
100. *centesimus*.
101. *centesimus primus*.
110. *centesimus decimus*.
124. *centesimus vicesimus quartus*.
200. *ducentesimus*.
300. *trecentesimus*.
400. *quadringentesimus*.
500. *quingentesimus*.
600. *sexcentesimus*.

700.	<i>septingentesimus.</i>
800.	<i>octingentesimus.</i>
900.	<i>nongentesimus.</i>
1000.	<i>millesimus.</i>
2000.	<i>bis millesimus.</i>
3000.	<i>ter millesimus, &c.</i>
10,000.	<i>decies millesimus.</i>
100,000.	<i>centies millesimus.</i>
1,000,000.	<i>decies centies millesimus.</i>

The years before and after the birth of Christ, after the foundation of Rome, or of any other era, are expressed in Latin by ordinal numerals—as 1854 is *anno millesimo octingentesimo quinquagesimo quarto*; all these words being in the ablative.

90. Distributive numerals answer to the question ‘how many each time?’ They are used only in the plural, and are adjectives of three terminations, *-i, -ae, -a*. The English language has no corresponding numerals, but has recourse to circumlocution—as *terni milites*, soldiers by threes.

The following table contains the leading distributive numerals:—

1. <i>singuli, ae, a</i> , one each time, or one by one.	30. <i>tricēni.</i>
2. <i>bini</i> , two each time.	40. <i>quadragēni.</i>
3. <i>terni (trini)</i> , three each time.	50. <i>quingēni.</i>
4. <i>quaterni.</i>	60. <i>sexageni.</i>
5. <i>quini.</i>	70. <i>septuageni.</i>
6. <i>seni.</i>	80. <i>octogeni.</i>
7. <i>septēni.</i>	90. <i>nonageni.</i>
8. <i>octōni.</i>	100. <i>centēni.</i>
9. <i>novēni.</i>	200. <i>ducenti.</i>
10. <i>dēni.</i>	300. <i>trecenti.</i>
11. <i>undēni.</i>	400. <i>quadringēni.</i>
12. <i>duodēni.</i>	500. <i>quingēni.</i>
13. <i>terni deni.</i>	600. <i>sexcenti.</i>
14. <i>quaterni deni, &c.</i>	700. <i>septingēni.</i>
18. <i>octoni deni, or duodevicensi.</i>	800. <i>octingēni.</i>
19. <i>noveni, or undevicensi.</i>	900. <i>nongeni.</i>
20. <i>vicēni.</i>	1000. <i>singula millia</i> , or simply
21. <i>viceni singuli.</i>	2000. <i>bina millia.</i> [millia.]
22. <i>viceni bini, &c.</i>	3000. <i>terna millia.</i>
	10,000. <i>dena millia.</i>

Distributives are used instead of cardinals when joined to substantives which have no singular, or of which the plural has a different meaning from that of the singular—as *bina castra*, two camps; *binae litterae*, two letters; *binae aedes*, two houses. In this case, however, it is customary to use *uni, ae, a*, and *trini, ae, a*, instead of *singuli* and *terni*. Words which have a different meaning in the singular and plural deserve particular attention; thus *binae litterae* signifies two letters or epistles, but *duae litterae* two letters of the alphabet; *duae aedes*, two temples, but *binae aedes*, two houses.

Distributives, from the nature of their meaning, are employed in multiplication in connection with adverbial numerals—as *bis binu*,

twice two; *quater septeni dies*, four times seven days; *bis semi pueri*, twice six boys.

91. Multiplicative numerals answering to the question 'how many fold?' end in *plex*, and are adjectives of the third declension (gen. *plīcis*), and have one termination only for all genders.

The following are the only multiplicatives that occur in Latin writers:—

simplex, simple.
duplex, twofold.
triplex, threefold.
quadruplex, fourfold.

quincuplex, fivefold.
septemplex, sevenfold.
decemplex, tenfold.
centumplex, a hundredfold.

92. Proportional numerals answer to the question 'how many times more?' They are adjectives ending in *plus*, *a*, *um*; but occur generally only in the neuter gender.

The only proportional numerals that occur in Latin writers are—

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>simples</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , simple. | 7. <i>septuplus</i> , seven times as much. |
| 2. <i>duplus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , twice as much. | 8. <i>octuplus</i> , eight times as much. |
| 3. <i>triplus</i> , thrice as much. | 10. <i>decuplus</i> , ten times as much. |
| 4. <i>quadruplus</i> , four times as much. | 100. <i>centuplus</i> , a hundred times as much. |
| 5. <i>quincuplus</i> , five times as much. | |

93. Adverbial numerals denoting repetition answer to the question 'how often?' As adverbs, they are not susceptible of any inflection.

1. *semel*, once.
2. *bis*, twice.
3. *ter*, thrice.
4. *quater*, four times.
5. *quingies*, five times, &c.
6. *sexies*, or *sexiens*.
7. *septies*, or *septiens*, &c.
8. *octies*.
9. *novies*.
10. *decies*.
11. *undecies*.
12. *duodecies*.
13. *terdecies*, or *tredecies*.
14. *quaterdecies*, or *quatuordecies*.
15. *quingiesdecies*, or *quindecies*.
16. *sexiesdecies*, or *sedecies*.
17. *septiesdecies*.
18. *duodevicies*, or *octiesdecies*.
19. *undevicies*, or *noviesdecies*.
20. *vicies*.
21. *semel et vices*, or *vices semel*.
22. *bis et vices*, or *vices bis*.

23. *ter et vices*, or *vices ter*, &c.
30. *trices*.
40. *quadrages*.
50. *quingages*.
60. *sexages*.
70. *septuages*.
80. *octoges*.
90. *nonages*.
100. *centies*.
130. *centies trices*, or *centies et trices*.
200. *ducenties*.
300. *trecenties*.
400. *quadringenties*.
500. *quingenties*.
600. *sexcenties*.
700. *septingenties*.
800. *octingenties*.
900. *nongenties*.
1000. *millies*.
2000. *bis millies*, &c.
- 10,000. *decies millies*.
- 100,000. *centies millies*.

94. Fractional numbers are always expressed in Latin by *pars* (part)—as *dimidia pars*, $\frac{1}{2}$; *tertia pars*, $\frac{1}{3}$; *quarta pars*, $\frac{1}{4}$; *quinta pars*, $\frac{1}{5}$; *sexta pars*, $\frac{1}{6}$.

95. When the number of parts in a fractional number is less by one than the number of parts into which the whole is divided—as $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{2}{4}$, $\frac{2}{5}$, the fractions are expressed simply by *duae*, *tres*, *quatuor*, to which must be understood *partes*, and it must be conceived thus: two parts out of three, three parts out of four, four parts out of five.

96. All other fractions are expressed just as in English—as $\frac{2}{3}$, *duae quintae*; $\frac{3}{4}$, *tres quintae*; $\frac{2}{7}$, *quatuor septimae*; $\frac{5}{7}$, *quinque septimae*, *partes* being understood.

PRONOUNS.

97. Pronouns are words which supply the place of substantives, or refer to substantives mentioned either before or after—as *Ego*, I; *tu*, thou; *nos*, we; *vos*, you; *homo qui laudat*, the man *who* praises; *ille vir*, that man.

98. The pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, and *vos*, supplying the place of names, may be regarded as substantives, and convey a full meaning by themselves; whence they are called *substantive*, or *personal pronouns*. All other pronouns may be regarded as adjectives, their meaning not being complete without a substantive either expressly added or understood.

99. Latin pronouns may be arranged in seven classes:—

1. Substantive pronouns—as *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*.
2. Adjunctive pronouns—as *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, self.
3. Demonstrative pronouns—as *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this; *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, that; *is*, *ea*, *id*, and its derivative, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
4. Possessive pronouns—*meus*, *a*, *um*; *tuus*, *a*, *um*; *suus*, *a*, *um*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*.
5. Relative pronouns—*qui*, *quae*, *quod*, and its compounds, *quicumque* and *quisquis*.
6. Interrogative pronouns—*quis*, *quae*, *quid*, and *qui*, *quae*, *quod*.
7. Indefinite pronouns—as *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* and *aliquod*; *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quoddam*; *quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quidpiam* and *quodpiam*, and the compound *aliquispiam*; *quisquam* (masc. and fem.), *quidquam*; *quivis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* and *quodvis*; *quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet* and *quidlibet*; *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque*, and all other compounds of *qui* and *quis*.

100. Substantive pronouns always stand by themselves, and are not joined to substantives.

Ego denotes the person speaking—that is, the first person; and *tu* the person spoken to, or the second person. In English, we have also a pronoun of the third, or the person spoken of—namely, *he*, *she*, and *it*; but the Latin language has no substantive pronoun for the third person in the nominative; and when it is to be expressed, its place must be supplied by the demonstrative pronoun *is* or *ille*. In the oblique cases, however, there are forms for the third person.

101. The substantive pronouns are very peculiar in the formation of their cases: they are declined thus:—

SINGULAR.		
First Person.	Second Person.	Third Person.
Nom. <i>ego</i> , I.	<i>tū</i> , thou.	wanting.
Gen. <i>meī</i> , of me.	<i>tui</i> , of thee.	<i>sui</i> , of himself, herself, itself.
Dat. <i>mīhi</i> , to me.	<i>tibi</i> , to thee.	<i>sibi</i> , to himself, herself, itself.
Acc. <i>mē</i> , me.	<i>tē</i> , thee.	<i>sē</i> , himself, herself, itself.
Voc. wanting.	<i>tū</i> , thou.	wanting.
Abl. <i>mē</i> , with, by, from, or in me.	<i>tē</i> , with, by, from, or in thee.	<i>sē</i> , with, by, from, or in himself, &c.
PLURAL.		
Nom. <i>nōs</i> , we.	<i>vōs</i> , you.	wanting.
Gen. <i>nostrī</i> , or <i>nostrum</i> , of us.	<i>vestrī</i> , or <i>vestrum</i> , of you.	<i>sui</i> , of themselves.
Dat. <i>nōbīs</i> , to us.	<i>vōbīs</i> , to you.	<i>sibi</i> , to themselves.
Acc. <i>nōs</i> , us.	<i>vōs</i> , you.	<i>sē</i> , themselves.
Voc. wanting.	<i>vōs</i> , you.	wanting.
Abl. <i>nōbīs</i> , with, by, from, or in us.	<i>vōbīs</i> , with, by, from, or in you.	<i>sē</i> , with, by, from, or in themselves.

The pronoun of the third person is properly a reflective; that is, one which refers either to the subject of the clause in which it occurs, or if it appears in an inserted clause, to the subject of the leading clause—as *Cato se interfecit*, ‘Cato killed himself,’ the *se* referring to Cato, the subject; *amicus meus contemnebat divitias, quod se felicem reddere non possent*, ‘my friend despised wealth, because it could not make him happy,’ the *se* referring to my friend, the subject of the leading clause. Wherever there is no such reference to the subject, but where the pronoun refers to a different person or thing from the subject, the oblique cases must be taken from *is*, *ea*, *id*, or from *ille*, *illa*, *illud*—as *ubi ad hostem accessit, interfecit eum*, ‘when he came near

the enemy, he slew him,' the *eum* not referring to the subject, but to *hostem*.

The genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, are the genitives of the neuter of the possessive pronouns *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, so that *mei* properly means 'of my being;' that is, 'of me.' The genitives plural *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used only in a partitive sense—as 'every one of us,' *unusquisque nostrum*; but 'he remembers us,' *nostri reminiscitur*.

102. The adjunctive pronoun *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, is commonly joined to substantives and other pronouns, and is declined as follows, the plural being the same as that of adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um* :—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> .	Nom. <i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsae</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> .
Gen. <i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> .	Gen. <i>ipsorum</i> ,	<i>ipsarum</i> ,	<i>ipsorum</i> .
Dat. <i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> .	Dat. <i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> .
Acc. <i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsam</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> .	Acc. <i>ipsos</i> ,	<i>ipsas</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> .
Abl. <i>ipso</i> ,	<i>ipsa</i> ,	<i>ipso</i> .	Abl. <i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> .

103. Demonstrative pronouns point to an object. *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, points to an object near to the speaker, and accordingly answers to the English 'this;' whereas *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, points to a more distant object, and answers to the English 'that,' or 'yon.' *Iste*, *ista*, *istud*, refers to the person spoken to, or to things connected with him, and is accordingly termed the demonstrative of the second person.

As by using *hic* a speaker may point to himself, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person, while *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, pointing to a distant object, or the one spoken of, is termed the demonstrative of the third person. *Is*, *ea*, *id*, generally refers to something mentioned before, being almost equivalent to 'the person or thing mentioned before,' or it is followed by an explanatory relative clause, as in English 'he who,' is *qui*. This pronoun can hardly be called a demonstrative. *Idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, 'the same,' expresses unity or identity.

104. The declension of the demonstrative pronouns has many peculiarities.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>hic</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	Nom. <i>hi</i> ,	<i>hae</i> ,	<i>haec</i> .
Gen. <i>hujus</i> ,	<i>huius</i> ,	<i>huius</i> .	Gen. <i>horum</i> ,	<i>harum</i> ,	<i>horum</i> .
Dat. <i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hunc</i> .	Dat. <i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> .
Acc. <i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	Acc. <i>hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>haec</i> .
Abl. <i>hoc</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	Abl. <i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> .

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id.</i>	Nom. <i>ii</i> (<i>ei</i>),	<i>eae</i> ,	<i>ea</i> .
Gen. <i>ejus</i> ,	<i>ejus</i> ,	<i>ejus</i> .	Gen. <i>eorum</i> ,	<i>eārum</i> ,	<i>eōrum</i> .
Dat. <i>ei</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ei</i> .	Dat. <i>iis</i> (<i>eīs</i>),	<i>iīs</i> (<i>eīs</i>),	<i>iīs</i> (<i>eīs</i> .)
Acc. <i>eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id.</i>	Acc. <i>eōs</i> ,	<i>eās</i> ,	<i>ea</i> .
Abl. <i>eō</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>eō</i> .	Abl. <i>iīs</i> (<i>eīs</i>),	<i>iīs</i> (<i>eīs</i>),	<i>iīs</i> (<i>eīs</i> .)

Ille, illa, illud, and *iste, ista, istud*, are both declined like *ipse* (No. 102)—as, gen. *illius*, dat. *illi*, &c.; *istius, isti*, &c. *Idem, eādem, idem*, being composed of *is, ea, id*, with the suffix *dem*, is declined like *is, ea, id*, with *dem* attached to it—as, gen. *ejusdem*, dat. *eidem*, acc. *eundem, eandem, idem*, &c. The *n* in *eundem* and *eandem* is merely a euphonic change for *eumdem, eamdem*, and so also in the genitive plural *eorundem* and *earundem*.

105. The possessive pronouns are real adjectives of three terminations (masculine *us* or *er*, feminine *a*, neuter *um*); the masculine and neuter following the second, and the feminine the first declension. They are—*meus, meu, meum*, my; *tuus, tua, tuum*, thy; *suus, sua, suum*, his; *noster, nostra, nostrum*, our; *vester, vestra, vestrum*, your. *Meus*, however, makes the vocative singular masculine *mi* instead of *meē*.

There is a class of possessive pronouns ending in *as* (for all genders), genitive *atīs*—as *nostras, vestras, and cūjas*; these signify ‘belonging to our, your, whose country, family, or party;’ so that *nostrates* means our countrymen, or the men of our party or family.

106. The relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod*, ‘who,’ or ‘which,’ generally refers to a noun in a preceding clause, and introduces an explanatory clause—as Socrates, *who* was the wisest of the Athenians, was sentenced to death. Its declension is as follows:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>quī</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> .	Nom. <i>quī</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quae</i> .
Gen. <i>cūjus</i> ,	<i>cūjus</i> ,	<i>cūjus</i> .	Gen. <i>quōrum</i> ,	<i>quārum</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> .
Dat. <i>cūi</i> ,	<i>cūi</i> ,	<i>cūi</i> .	Dat. <i>quībus</i> ,	<i>quībus</i> ,	<i>quībus</i> .
Acc. <i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> .	Acc. <i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quae</i> .
Abl. <i>quō</i> ,	<i>quā</i> ,	<i>quō</i> .	Abl. <i>quībus</i> ,	<i>quībus</i> ,	<i>quībus</i> .

107. The compound *quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque*, signifies ‘whoever’ or ‘whichever;’ and *quisquis* (masc. and fem.), *quidquid* (neut.), denotes ‘every one who.’ *Quicunque*, in all its genders, is joined to substantives, and is accordingly treated as an adjective; *quisquis* is likewise sometimes joined to substantives, but *quidquid* never, and is accordingly regarded as a substantive. *Quicunque* is declined like *qui, cunque* being

merely affixed to the cases—as *cujuscunque*, *cuicunque*, *quemcunque*, &c. *Quisquis* commonly occurs only in the nominative masculine, the nominative and accusative neuter (*quidquid*), and in the ablative masculine and neuter (*quoquo*.)

108. There are two interrogative pronouns, *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, and *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, the latter of which is in form the same as the relative pronoun. The former has the nature of a substantive, and is therefore not joined to a substantive, but used by itself, while the latter, having the nature of an adjective, is joined to a substantive—as *quid facis?* ‘what art thou doing?’—*quod facinus commisit?* ‘what crime has he committed?’

109. The declension of the interrogative pronouns is the same as that of the relative. When a question is to be expressed with a certain degree of impatience, the particle *nam* is attached to *quis*—as *quisnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam*, or *quodnam*, ‘who then?’ or ‘what then?’

The ablative singular for all genders, *quī*, occurs only in the sense of ‘in what manner?’ or ‘how?’—as *quī fit?* ‘how does it happen?’—*quī convenit?* ‘how is it consistent?’

110. The indefinite pronouns express an indefinite generality. Their declension is almost the same as that of the relative pronoun.

The most common indefinite pronoun is *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* and *aliquod* (some one.) The neuter, *aliquid*, has the nature of a substantive, and *aliquod* that of an adjective. The masculine *aliquis* is used both as a substantive and as an adjective. The feminine singular and the neuter plural differ in termination from the relative pronoun, being *aliqua*, and not *aliquae*, which is the feminine plural. There is also a simple form without the prefix *ali* (from the obsolete form *alis*, neut. *alid*.); namely, *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, and *qui*, *qua*, *quod*, which is declined like the relative, except that the feminine is both *quae* and *qua*, and the neuter plural likewise both *quae* and *qua*. *Quid* is used only as a substantive, and *quod* as an adjective. *Quis* may be used in both senses—as *dicat quis*, ‘some one may say;’ *si quis dux*, ‘if any general.’ It may be said, in general, that this simple indefinite occurs only after the particles *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*, and after the relatives *quo*, *quanto*, and *quum*.

Another indefinite pronoun is *ecquis*, *ecqua*, *ecquid*, and *ecquī*, *ecquae*, *ecquod* (from *en* and *quis*), signifying ‘whether any one.’ A strengthened form is *ecquisnam* or *numquisnam*.

Quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quoddam*, ‘a certain one.’ The form *quiddam* is a substantive, and *quoddam* an adjective. It is declined like the relative, gen. *cujusdam*, dat. *cuidam*, &c.

Aliquispiam, or *quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quidpiam* and *quodpiam*. *Quispiam* is chiefly used as a substantive, but *aliquispiam* occurs also as an adjective, and *quidpiam* is used only as a substantive.

Quisquam (masc. and fem.), *quidquam* (neut.), ‘any one,’ occurs only in negative clauses, or at least has always a negative meaning. *Quisquam* is used both as a substantive and as an adjective—as *scriptor quisquam*, ‘any writer;’ *quisquam Gallus*, ‘any Gaul;’ but it has no

plural. *Ullus*, which has the same meaning as *quisquam*, occurs only as an adjective, excepting a few passages.

Quivis, quilibet (any one who pleases, from *vis*, 'thou wilt,' and *libet*, 'it pleases'), and *quisque* (every one), are declined like the relative; when used as substantives, they make the neuter *quid*, and when used as adjectives, *quod*.

Unusquisque, unaquaque, unumquidque and *unumquodque*, 'every one,' is declined in both the words of which it is composed—as gen. *uniuscujusque*, dat. *unicuique*, acc. *unumquemque, unamquamque*, &c.

Quincunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, 'whosoever,' or 'whichsoever,' has no neuter *quidcunque*.

Quisquis, quidquid, generally occurs only in these two forms as a substantive. Its place is supplied by *quicunque*, which has the same meaning. (See No. 107.)

111. Besides the pronouns above enumerated, there are others, commonly termed pronominal adjectives:—

Uter, ultra, utrum, 'which of two,' and its compounds *utervis, uterlibet, utercunque* (which of the two you please), *uterque* (each of two or both), and *alteruter* (either the one or the other.) They are all declined like *uter*, gen. *utrius*, dat. *utri*. In *alteruter*, sometimes both words are declined, and sometimes the latter only—as gen. *alterius utrius*, acc. *alterum utrum, or alterutrum*.

Neuter, neutra, neutrum (that is, *ne* or *non uter*), 'neither of the two,' is declined like *uter*.

Alter, altera, alterum, 'one of two,' or 'the second,' gen. *alterius*, dat. *alteri*, &c.

Alius, alia, aliud, 'another,' gen. *alius*, dat. *alii*, is never used in speaking of two; hence it means 'another,' and not 'the other.'

Ullus, ulla, ullum, 'any,' gen. *ullius*, dat. *ulli*, &c.

Nullus, a, um (that is, *ne* or *non ullus*), 'none,' or 'no one.'

112. There is another class of pronominal adjectives, denoting the nature, size, or number of things. Some of them can express the same idea in a demonstrative, relative, interrogative, or indefinite form; and those in which this is the case are termed correlatives, as—

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrog.	Indefinite.
<i>talis, e</i> , such a one.	<i>qualis, e</i> , as, or of what kind.	<i>qualiscunque</i> and <i>qualislibet</i> , of whatever kind.
<i>tantus, a, um</i> , so great.	<i>quantus, a, um</i> , as great, or how great?	<i>quantuscunque</i> and <i>quantuslibet</i> , however great.
<i>tot</i> (indeclinable), so many.	<i>quot</i> , as many, or how many?	<i>quotcunque</i> and <i>quotquot</i> , however many.
<i>totidem</i> , just as many.	<i>quotus, a, um</i> , which in the series?	

There are a few with the prefix *ali*—as *aliquantus*, of a certain or tolerable greatness; *aliquot*, some or a few; which may likewise be classed among the indefinite pronominal adjectives.

113. From pronouns are formed a number of pronominal adverbs, denoting place where; place whither; and place whence;—the way, manner, or time in which anything is done:—

1. Pronominal adverbs denoting the place *where* anything is done:—*ibi*, here or there; *hic*, here; *istic*, there, near you; *illic*, in that place; *ibidem*, in the same place; *altibi*, elsewhere; *ubi*, where; *ubicunque* and *ubiubi*, wherever; *alicubi*, somewhere; *uspiam* and *usquam*, anywhere; *nusquam*, nowhere; *utrobique*, in both places; *ubivis* and *ubilibet*, anywhere; *ubique*, everywhere. All these adverbs ending in *i* (those in *c* have the demonstrative enclitic *ce* attached) are properly ancient datives or locatives, denoting place where.
 2. Pronominal adverbs denoting the place *whither* anything proceeds:—*eo*, thither; *huc*, hither; *istuc* and *isto*, to the place where you are; *illuc* and *illo*, thither, or to the place where he (or it) is; *eodem*, to the same place or part; *alio*, to another place; *quo*, to which place; *utro*, to which of two places; *quocunque*, *quoquo*, to which place soever; *quovis*, *quolibet*, to whichever place you please; *aliquo*, to some place; *utroque*, to both places; *usquam*, to any place; *nusquam*, to no place.
 3. Pronominal adverbs denoting the place *whence* anything proceeds:—*inde*, thence; *hinc*, from this place; *istinc*, from that place where you are; *illinc*, from that place where he or it is; *indidem*, from the same place; *aliunde*, from another place; *unde*, whence; *undecunque*, *undeunde*, whencesoever; *alicunde*, from some place; *utrinque*, from both sides or places; *undique*, from any or all sides; *undelibet*, whencesoever you please.
 4. Pronominal adverbs denoting the way or manner in which anything is done: *eā*, in that way; *hāc*, *istāc*, *illāc* or *illā*, *eādem*, *ita*, *sic*, *ut* or *uti*, *aliā*, *quā*, *quā*, *quācumque*, *quāquā*, *aliquā*, *quāvis*, and *quālibet*.
- All these forms are properly ablatives of the feminine, to which the substantive *viā* or *ratione* may be understood. They also appear in the compounds *eatenus* and *quatenus*.
5. Pronominal adverbs denoting time:—the demonstrative *tum* or *tunc*, then; the interrogative *quando*, when? *ecquando*, whether ever; the relative *quum*, when; the indefinite *aliquando*, at some time; *quandocunque* and *quandōque*, whenever; *unquam*, ever; *nunquam*, never.
 6. Pronominal adverbs of degree:—as *tam*, so, so much; *quam*, as, as much, or how much? *quantumvis* or *quamvis*, however much; and the compound *adeo*, to that degree.
 7. Pronominal adverbs of number:—*toties*, so often; *quoties*, as often, or how often? *quotiescunque*, however often; *aliquoties*, sometimes.
 8. Pronominal adverbs of cause:—*eo*, *hoc*, for this reason; *quod* or *quia*, because; *cur*, why?

THE VERB.

114. A verb is a word which denotes that a person or thing is in a certain state or condition, performs an action, or is acted upon. It therefore always implies existence and time; for whatever exists, exists in time. For example: I *sleep*—that is, I am asleep at the present *time*; I *sat* all day long—that is, I was sitting all day long (in past time); I have *worked*—that is, I *have been* (in past time) at work.

115. Verbs which denote that the action expressed by them terminates in the agent or subject are called *intransitive* verbs. For example: 'I run,' 'I walk,' are actions complete in themselves without requiring an object. Verbs, on the other hand, which denote that the action of the agent passes from the agent to an object, are called *transitive* verbs—as 'I purchase,' 'I strike;' these are actions requiring an object, and cannot be fully understood unless that object is mentioned or understood from the context—as 'I purchase a house,' 'I strike the offender.'

116. The object of a transitive verb is generally in the accusative. The object in which the action terminates may also be considered as the subject in the state of undergoing the action. Hence every transitive verb has an *active* and a *passive* form. 'I *strike* you,' therefore, is the active form, but 'you *are struck* by me' is the passive form. Intransitive verbs, however, generally have no passive form; and when it does occur, it is only as an impersonal verb—as *curritur*, 'running is taking place;' or, as we should say, 'they' or 'people run.'

In the case of a transitive verb, the subject may at the same time be the object—as *amo me*, I love myself; *amat se*, he loves himself. In this case a verb is said to be used in a reflective sense. Many verbs assume a passive form to express their reflective meaning—as *delector*, I delight myself, or am delighted; *fallor*, I am deceived, or deceive myself.

117. There are numerous verbs in Latin which have a passive form, but an active meaning. These are called *Deponents*—as *imitor*, I imitate; *hortor*, I admonish; *morior*, I die; *reminiscor*, I remember. Many of them are in reality passives, or verbs used in a reflective sense—such as *vehor*, I ride in a carriage, properly signifies 'I am carried;' *versor*, I stay in a place, properly signifies 'I turn myself.'

118. A few verbs, however, have an active form, but a passive meaning—as *fio*, I become, or am made; *vapulo*, I am beaten; *veneo*, I am sold—such are called *neuter passives*. Some again

have a passive form in the past participle, and the tenses formed from it, though in meaning, as well as in all their other forms, they are active—as *audeo*, I dare; *fido*, I trust; *gaudeo*, I rejoice; *soleo*, I am wont; their perfects, therefore, being *ausus sum*, *fisus sum*, *gavisus sum*, *solitus sum*. These are termed *Semideponents*.

119. The Latin language has four moods, or modes, of representing a state or action, and each of them is indicated by special forms of the verb.

1. The *Indicative* represents a state or action simply as a fact—as *laudo*, I praise; *laudavi*, I have praised; *laudabo*, I shall praise; *laudor*, I am praised.
2. The *Subjunctive* represents a state or action as possible, conceivable, or desirable—*laudet aliquis*, some one may praise; *opto ut veniat*, I wish that he may come; *veniat*, let him come!
3. The *Imperative* represents a state or action in the form of a command—as *lauda*, praise; *scribe*, write ye.
4. The *Infinitive* represents a state or action in the most general and indefinite manner, without ascribing it to any subject—as *laudare*, to praise; *laudavisse*, to have praised; *scribere*, to write; *scripsisse*, to have written.

120. Besides these moods, the verb has certain forms which may be classed among nouns (at least so far as their form is concerned), and are accordingly declinable. These are—

1. The *Supine*, which has only an accusative in *um*, and an ablative in *u*—as *amatum* and *amatu*; *lectum* and *lectu*; *auditum* and *auditu*.
2. The *Gerund* likewise expresses a state or action in a general way. It also is a verbal noun ending in *ndum*, but it is used only in its oblique cases—as gen. *amandi*, dat. *amando*, acc. *amandum*, abl. *amando*.
3. The *Participles* are in form adjectives derived from verbs, but at the same time retain the idea of time which is inherent in the verb. A verb may have two participles in the active and two in the passive. Those in the active are the participle of the present ending in *ns* for all genders, and the participle of the future ending in *-urus*, *-a*, *-um*; the former represents the action as going on or in progress, and the latter as going to take place in future—as *amans*, loving; *scribens*, writing; *amaturus*, going to love, or about to love; *scripturus*, going to write, or about to write. The two participles of the passive are the past participle ending in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, and what is called the gerundive, ending in *-ndus*, *-nda*, *-ndum*; the former represents an action in a state of completion, the latter indicates that it is going on, or must take place—as *amatus*, loved; *scriptus*, written; *auditus*, heard; *amandus*, to be loved; *audiendus*, to be heard.

Intransitive verbs, having no regular passive voice, cannot have either of the passive participles; but their neuter is nevertheless used in connection with the verb *esse*, 'to be'—as *cursum est*, running has taken place, or people have been running; *currendum est*, there is a necessity for running. Deponent verbs have the four participles—as *imitans*, imitating; *imitatus*, having imitated; *imitaturus*, about to imitate; and *imitandus*, to be imitated.

121. Every state or action is represented as taking place either in past, or present, or future time. But in each of these times a state or action may be described as completed, or as progressing. Hence arise six forms or *Tenses* to express the different times and relations of a state or action; and a verb is said to have *six tenses*, which might occur in all the moods: but the Latin language has its six tenses, both in the active and passive, of the Indicative only; the Subjunctive has but five; the Infinitive three; and the Imperative only two. Three of these tenses represent a state or action as not completed or in a state of progress, and the three remaining as completed. The three tenses expressing incompleteness or progression are—

1. The PRESENT—as *laudo*, I praise, or am praising; and *laudor*, I am praised; the action not being terminated at the present time.
2. The IMPERFECT—as *laudabam*, I praised, or was praising; and *laudabar*, I was being praised; the action is past, but not completed in past time.
3. The FUTURE—as *laudabo*, I shall praise, or shall be praising; *laudabor*, I shall be praised; the action is future, but not yet completed.

The three tenses expressing a completed action are—

1. The PERFECT—as *laudavi*, I have praised; *laudatus sum*, I have been praised, denoting a past action completed at the present time.
2. The PLUPERFECT—as *laudaveram*, I had praised; and *laudatus eram*, I had been praised, denoting a past action completed in past time.
3. The FUTURE PERFECT—as *laudavero*, I shall be praised; and *laudatus ero*, I shall have been praised, denoting an action completed in future time.

When a state or action is ascribed to one person or thing, the verb is in the singular; when to two or more, in the plural—as *laudo*, I praise; *laudamus*, we praise. A state or action further may be assigned to the person or persons speaking (*I* or *we*), to the person or persons spoken to (*thou* or *you*), and to the person or persons spoken of (*he*, *she*, *it*, or *they*.) There are accordingly three persons in the singular, and three in the plural, which are commonly distinguished by the terms, the first, second, and third person singular or plural. The two numbers occur in all moods except the infinitive, and the three different persons only in the indicative and subjunctive; the imperative has only the second and third persons, and the infinitive does not assign an action to any person at all. The pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he* (*she*, *it*), *we*, *you*, *they*, are usually not expressed in Latin, as they are sufficiently indicated by the terminations of the verb itself; they are expressed only when they have a particular emphasis.

To put a verb through the active and passive voice, through its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons, is called the conjugation of a verb. Conjugation, like declension, consists mainly in change of termination. These terminations may be classified, according to the persons, in the active as well as in the passive voice. In the active, the first person singular, in all the tenses and moods, except the imperative, terminates in *o*, *i*, or *m*; in the passive in *r*: the second

person singular in the active in *s* or *sti*; in the passive in *ris*: the third person singular active in *t*; in the passive in *tur*: the first person plural active ends in *mus*; in the passive in *mur*: the second person plural active ends in *tis*; and in the passive in *mini*: the third person plural active ends in *nt*; and in the passive in *ntur*.

122. The different manners in which the terminations marking the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons are united with the stem of the verb, and the difference among the stems themselves, render it necessary to divide all verbs into four classes; hence there arise four conjugations.

123. The first conjugation, which may be termed the *a* conjugation, comprises all verbs whose stems end in *a*, which in the first person of the present indicative is contracted with the *o* of the termination into *o*, and in the present subjunctive is changed into *ē*—as *amo*, *amem*, from the stem *ama*; but in all other forms of the verb it reappears—as in *ama-s*, thou lovest; *ama-t*, he loves; *ama-re*, to love. The infinitive of verbs of this conjugation always ends in *-are*.

124. The second, called also the *e* conjugation, comprises all verbs whose stems end in *e*—as *mone-o*, I admonish; *monē-re*, to admonish; *doce-bam*, I taught; *docē-re*, to teach. The infinitive of this conjugation always ends in *-ēre*.

125. The third or consonant conjugation comprises all verbs whose stems end in a consonant or the vowel *u*—as *scrib-o*, I write; *scrib-ēre*, to write; *minu-o*, I lessen; *minu-ēre*, to lessen. The infinitive of verbs of the third conjugation invariably ends in *-ēre*—as *facio*, *facēre*.

A few insert *i* in the present indicative and the tenses formed from it—as *cap-i-o*, I take; present subjunctive, *cap-i-am*; imperfect indicative, *cap-i-ebam*; future indicative, *cap-i-am*; participle present, *cap-i-ens*; but in all other tenses the *i* is omitted.

126. The fourth conjugation, called also the *i* conjugation, comprises those verbs whose stems end in *i*, which is retained in all the moods and tenses—as *audi-o*, I hear; *audi-e-bam*, I heard; *audi-vi*, I have heard; *audi-re*, to hear. The infinitive of the fourth conjugation invariably ends in *-ire*.

As the stems of verbs of the first and second conjugations end in a vowel, the terminations are simply added to the stem—as *amo*, *ama-s*, *ama-t*, *ama-mus*, *ama-tis*, *ama-nt*; *mone-o*, *mone-s*, *mone-t*, *mone-mus*, *mone-tis*, *mone-nt*, and so also in the passive; but in the third conjugation a connecting vowel is inserted between the stem and the termination—as *leg-o*, *leg-i-s*, *leg-i-t*, *leg-i-mus*, *leg-i-tis*, *leg-u-nt*. The fourth conjugation likewise sometimes requires a connecting vowel—as in *audi-e-bam*, *audi-u-nt*.

127. The present indicative in each conjugation ends in *o*, and the infinitive respectively in *āre*, *ēre*, *ēre*, *īre*. But in order to be able to form the complete conjugation of a verb, it is

necessary, in addition to the present indicative and infinitive, to know the perfect indicative and the supine, since several other tenses are formed immediately from these.

128. The perfect is formed in the first and fourth conjugations by simply adding *vi* to the stem—as *amā-vi*, *audī-vi*. In the second conjugation the *e* of the stem is thrown out, and the termination *ui* is added—as *mone-o*, *mon-ui*.

129. In the third conjugation the perfect ends sometimes in *si* and sometimes in *ui*. The verbs whose stems end in *u* simply add *i* to them—as *minu-o*, *minu-i*. Those of which the stem ends in a consonant take *si*. When the stem ends in *c*, *g*, *h*, or *qu*, these consonants coalesce with *s* into *x*—as *dic-o*, *dixi*; *reg-o*, *rexī*; *veho*, *vexi*; *coquo*, *coxi*; *b* before *s* is changed into *p*—as *scrib-o*, *scripsi*; and *d* is thrown out—as *laed-o*, *lae-si*; but sometimes the *s* also must give way—as in *defend-o*, *defend-i*, instead of *defend-si*. The perfect in *ui* occurs chiefly in verbs ending in *lo* and *mo*—as *alo*, *alui*; *molo*, *molui*; *gemo*, *gemui*.

Some verbs whose stems end in consonants make their perfect by simply adding *i*—as *lēgo*, *lēgi*; *ēmo*, *ēmi*; and it should be observed that all verbs of this kind lengthen the vowel of the penult when it is short, as in the two examples just given: the only verbs in which the vowel of the penult remains short are—*bib-i*, *fid-i*, *scid-i*, and *tūl-i*, from *bibo*, *finde*, *scindo*, and *fero*.

130. The supine is formed in the first, third, and fourth conjugations, by adding *tum* (abl. *tu*) to the stem of the verb—as *am-o*, *ama-tum*, *em-o*, *em-tum*, *audi-o*, *audi-tum*. It must, however, be observed that *b* before *t* is changed into *p*; and *g*, *h*, and *qu*, into *c*—as *scrib-o*, *scrip-tum*; *leg-o*, *lec-tum*; *trah-o*, *trac-tum*; *coqu-o*, *coc-tum*. Verbs of the third conjugation, whose stems end in *d*, make their supines in *sum* (abl. *su*), before which the *d* is thrown out—as *laed-o*, *lae-sum*; *claud-o*, *clau-sum*. Verbs of the second conjugation change the *e* of the stem into *i* before *tum*—as *mone-o*, *moni-tum*.

131. It now remains to shew how from the four principal forms of a verb—namely, the *present*, *perfect*, *infinitive*, and *supine*—all the remaining forms are derived.

(a.) From the present are formed—

1. The present subjunctive active, by changing in the first conjugation the *o* into *em*—as *am-o*, *am-em*; and in the three other conjugations into *am*—as *mone-o*, *mone-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.
2. The present indicative passive, by the addition of *r*—as *am-o*, *am-or*; *mone-o*, *mone-or*; *leg-o*, *leg-or*; *audi-o*, *audi-or*.
3. The present subjunctive passive, by changing the *m* of the present subjunctive active into *r*—as *am-em*, *am-er*; *mone-am*, *mone-ar*; *leg-am*, *leg-ar*; *audi-am*, *audi-ar*.

4. The imperfect indicative active, in the first and second conjugations, by adding *bam* to the stem; and in the third and fourth, by prefixing the connecting vowel *ē* before *bam*—as *am-o*, *ama-bam*; *mone-o*, *mone-bam*; *leg-o*, *leg-e-bam*; *audi-o*, *audi-e-bam*.
5. The imperfect indicative passive, by changing the *m* of the imperfect indicative active into *r*—as *ama-bar*, *mone-bar*, *leg-e-bar*, *audi-e-bar*.
6. The future indicative active, in the first and second conjugations, by adding *bo* to the stem—as *ama-bo*, *mone-bo*; in the third and fourth, by changing the *o* of the present into *am*—as *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *fac-i-o*, *fac-i-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.
7. The future indicative passive, in the first and second conjugations, by adding *r* to the *bo* in the future indicative active—as *ama-bor*, *mone-bor*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing the *m* of the future indicative active into *r*—as *leg-ar*, *audi-ar*.
8. The participle present, by adding *ns* to the stem; in addition to which, however, in the third and fourth conjugations, the connecting vowel *e* is inserted between the stem and the termination *ns*—as *ama-ns*, *mone-ns*, *leg-e-ns*, *audi-e-ns*. From this participle, again, is formed the gerund and gerundivum, by changing *s* into *dum* and *dus*—as *ama-ndus* and *ama-ndum*, &c.

(b.) From the perfect are formed—

1. The perfect subjunctive active, by changing the *i* of the perfect into *ēr*—as *ama-vi*, *ama-verim*; *mon-ui*, *mon-uerim*; *leg-i*, *leg-erim*; *audi-vi*, *audi-verim*.
2. The pluperfect indicative active, by changing the *i* of the perfect into *eram*—as *ama-vi*, *ama-veram*; *mon-ui*, *mon-ueram*; *leg-i*, *leg-eram*; *audi-vi*, *audi-veram*.
3. The pluperfect subjunctive active, by changing the *i* of the perfect into *issem*—as *ama-vi*, *ama-vissem*; *mon-ui*, *mon-uissem*; *leg-i*, *leg-issem*; *audi-vi*, *audi-vissem*.
4. The future perfect active, by changing *i* into *ēro*—as *ama-vi*, *ama-vero*; *mon-ui*, *mon-uero*; *leg-i*, *leg-ero*; *audi-vi*, *audi-vero*.
5. The perfect infinitive active, by changing *i* into *isse*—as *ama-vi*, *ama-visse*; *mon-ui*, *mon-uisse*; *leg-i*, *leg-isse*; *audi-vi*, *audi-visse*.

(c.) From the present infinitive active are formed—

1. The imperfect subjunctive active, by adding *m* to the termination *re*—as *ama-re*, *ama-rem*; *mone-re*, *mone-rem*; *leg-e-re*, *leg-e-rem*; *audi-re*, *audi-rem*.
2. The imperfect subjunctive passive, by adding *r* to the termination of the infinitive *re*—as *ama-re*, *ama-rer*; *mone-re*, *mone-rer*; *leg-e-re*, *leg-e-rer*; *audi-re*, *audi-rer*.
3. The imperative active, by dropping the termination *re*—as *ama-re*, *amā*; *mone-re*, *monē*; *leg-e-re*, *legē*; *audi-re*, *audī*.
4. The imperative passive, which in all conjugations is quite like the infinitive active.
5. The infinitive present passive, by changing *re* into *ri*—as *ama-re*, *ama-ri*; *mone-re*, *mone-ri*; *audi-re*, *audi-ri*; but in the third conjugation the two syllables *ēre* are changed into *i*—as *leg-e-re*, *leg-i*.

(d.) From the supine are formed—

1. The participle perfect passive, by changing *um* into *us*, *a*, *um*—as *ama-tum*, *ama-tus*, *a*, *um*; *moni-tum*, *moni-tus*, *a*, *um*; *lec-tum*, *lec-tus*, *a*, *um*; *audi-tum*, *audi-tus*, *a*, *um*.

2. The participle future active, by changing *um* into *ūrus*, *a*, *um*—as *ama-tum*, *ama-turus*, *a*, *um*; *moni-tum*, *moni-turus*, *a*, *um*; *lec-tum*, *lec-turus*, *a*, *um*; *audi-tum*, *audi-turus*, *a*, *um*.

Some tenses cannot be formed without the auxiliary verb *Esse*, 'to be.' These tenses are in the active, the future subjunctive, and the future infinitive, which consist of the participle future active with *esse*; and in the passive, the perfect indicative and subjunctive, the pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, the future perfect, and the perfect infinitive, which consist of the participle perfect passive with *esse*.

THE VERB ESSE, TO BE.

132. *Esse* is the only Latin auxiliary, but is also used as a principal verb, denoting existence. Its conjugation is irregular; the perfect, and the tenses derived from it, are formed from the obsolete verb *fuo*, and the remaining tenses from the stem *ēs*; so that the present *sum*, *sim*, *sumus*, *sunt*, *sis*, *sit*, &c. are shortened forms for *es-um*, *es-im*, *es-umus*, *es-unt*, *es-is*, *es-it*, &c. The *s* of the stem is in some forms changed into *r*, as is most common in the Latin language—as *eram*, *ero*, for *esam*, *eso*. *Esse* has neither gerund nor supine.

PRINCIPAL FORMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

sum.

PERFECT.

fui.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

esse.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. *sum*, I am.
ēs, thou art.
est, he (she or it) is.
 Plur. *sūmus*, we are.
estis, you are.
sunt, they are.

Sing. *sim*, I am, or may be.
sīs, thou art, or mayst be.
sit, he is, or may be.
 Plur. *simus*, we are, or may be.
sitis, you are, or may be.
sint, they are, or may be.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *ēr-am*, I was.
ēr-ās, thou wert.
ēr-at, he (she or it) was.
 Plur. *ēr-āmus*, we were.
ēr-ātis, you were.
ēr-ant, they were.

Sing. *ess-em*, I was, might, or should be.
ess-es, thou wert, mightst, or shouldst be.
ess-ēt, he was, &c.
 Plur. *ess-ēmus*, we were, &c.
ess-ētis, you were, &c.
ess-ent, they were, &c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

FUTURE.

Sing. *ēr-o*, I shall be.*ēr-is*, thou wilt be.*ēr-it*, he will be.Plur. *ēr-īmus*, we shall be.*ēr-ītis*, you will be.*ēr-unt*, they will be.Sing. *fū-tūrus* (*a, um*) *sim*, I shall be, or may be about to be.*fu-turus sis*, thou wilt be, or mayst be about to be.*fu-turus sit*, he will be, &c.Plur. *fu-turi* (*ae, a*) *simus*, we shall be, &c.*fu-turi sitis*, you will be, &c.*fu-turi sint*, they will be, &c.

PERFECT.

Sing. *fu-i*, I was, or have been.*fu-istī*, thou wert, or hast been.*fu-it*, he was, or has been.Plur. *fu-īmus*, we were, or have been.*fu-istis*, you were, or have been.*fu-erunt*, or *fu-ere*, they were, or have been.Sing. *fu-ērim*, I have been, or may have been.*fu-ēris*, thou hast been, or mayst have been.*fu-erit*, he has been, &c.Plur. *fu-ērīmus*, we have been, &c.*fu-ērītis*, you have been, &c.*fu-erint*, they have been, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *fu-eram*, I had been.*fu-erās*, thou hadst been.*fu-erāt*, he had been.Plur. *fu-erāmus*, we had been.*fu-erātis*, you had been.*fu-erant*, they had been.Sing. *fu-issem*, I had been, or I might or should have been.*fu-issēs*, thou hadst been, or thou mightst or wouldst have been.*fu-issēt*, he had been, &c.Plur. *fu-issēmus*, we had been, &c.*fu-issētis*, you had been, &c.*fu-issent*, they had been, &c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. <i>fu-ĕro</i> , I shall have been.
<i>fu-ĕris</i> , thou wilt have been.
<i>fu-ĕrit</i> , he will have been.
Plur. <i>fu-ĕrimus</i> , we shall have been.
<i>fu-ĕritis</i> , you will have been.
<i>fu-ĕrint</i> , they will have been.

The Subjunctive does not exist.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Sing. <i>ĕs</i> , be thou.
Plur. <i>ĕs-tĕ</i> , be ye.

Sing. <i>es-to</i> , thou shalt be.
<i>es-to</i> , he shall be.
Plur. <i>es-tōtĕ</i> , you shall be.
<i>sunto</i> , they shall be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present infinitive, *esse*, to be.

Perfect infinitive, *fu-isse*, to have been.

Future infinitive, *fū-tūrum*, *am*, *um*, *esse*, or *fore*, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, does not exist.

Future, *fū-turus*, *a*, *um*, one who is to be, or is about to be.

The participle present, if it did exist, should be *es-ens* or *sens*, as it actually does occur in the compounds *ab-sens*, absent (from *absum*), and *prae-sens*, present (from *praesum*.)

The compounds *absum*, I am absent; *adsum*, I am present; *desum*, I am wanting or missing; *insum*, I am in; *intersum*, I am between or among; *obsum*, I am against or in the way; *praesum*, I am before or at the head; *prosum*, I am useful; *subsum*, I am under; *supersum*, I am over, I am left; are all conjugated like the simple *sum*. *Prosum*, however, inserts a *d* wherever the *pro* is followed by the radical vowel *e*—as *pro-d-est*, *pro-d-eram*, *pro-d-essem*, *pro-d-ero*, *pro-d-esse*; but *prosum*, *prosim*, *profui*, &c. are regular. *Possum* (I am able, or I can) is composed of *potis sum* or *pot sum*; but its conjugation is irregular.

Instead of the infinitive *futurum* (*am*, *um*) *esse*, there is another form, *fōre* (connected with *fuo*); and instead of the imperfect subjunctive *essem*, we have (likewise from *fuo*) *fōrem*, *fōres*, *fōret*, and *fōrent*.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

The following specimens of the four conjugations may serve as models according to which all other regular verbs are conjugated. *Lego*, although it has a slight irregularity, has been chosen as an example of the third conjugation, because its very irregularity renders unnecessary all change of the stem, which might tend to confuse rather than assist the learner at the outset.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>āmō.</i>	<i>āmā-vī.</i>	<i>āmā-tum.</i>	<i>āmā-rē.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *āmō*, I love.*āmā-s*, thou lovest.*āmā-t*, he loves.Plur. *āmā-mus*, we love.*āmā-tis*, you love.*ama-nt*, they love.Sing. *am-em*, I love, or may love.*am-ēs*, thou lovest, or mayst love.*am-ēt*, he loves, or may love.Plur. *am-ēmus*, we love, or may love.*am-ētis*, you love, or may love.*am-ent*, they love, or may love.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *amā-bam*, I was loving, or loved.*amā-bās*, thou wert loving, or lovedst.*amā-bāt*, he was loving, or loved.Plur. *amā-bāmūs*, we were loving, or loved.*amā-bātis*, you were loving, or loved.*amā-bant*, they were loving, or loved.Sing. *amā-rem*, I loved, might, or should love.*amā-rēs*, thou lovedst, mightst, or shouldst love.*amā-rēt*, he loved, might, or should love.Plur. *amā-rēmūs*, we loved, might, or should love.*amā-rētis*, you loved, might, or should love.*amā-rent*, they loved, might, or should love.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	
Sing. <i>amā-bo</i> , I shall love.	Sing. <i>amā-tūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sim</i> , I shall love, or may be about to love.
<i>amā-bis</i> , thou wilt love.	<i>amā-tūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sis</i> , thou wilt love, or mayst be about to love.
<i>amā-bit</i> , he will love.	<i>amā-tūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sit</i> , he will love, &c.
Plur. <i>amā-bim</i> us, we shall love.	Plur. <i>amā-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>sim</i> us, we shall love, &c.
<i>amā-bitis</i> , you will love.	<i>amā-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>sitis</i> , you will love, &c.
<i>amā-bunt</i> , they will love.	<i>amā-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>sint</i> , they will love, &c.
PERFECT.	
Sing. <i>amā-vī</i> , I loved, or have loved.	Sing. <i>amā-vērim</i> , I have loved, or may have loved.
<i>amā-visti</i> , thou lovedst, or hast loved.	<i>amā-vēris</i> , thou hast loved, or mayst have loved.
<i>amā-vit</i> , he loved, or has loved.	<i>amā-vērit</i> , he has loved, &c.
Plur. <i>amā-vim</i> us, we loved, or have loved.	Plur. <i>amā-vērim</i> us, we have loved, &c.
<i>amā-vistis</i> , you loved, or have loved.	<i>amā-vēritis</i> , you have loved, &c.
<i>amā-vērunt</i> , or <i>amā- vēre</i> , they loved, or have loved.	<i>amā-vērint</i> , they have loved, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Sing. <i>amā-vēram</i> , I had loved.	Sing. <i>amā-vissem</i> , I had, might, or should have loved.
<i>amā-vēras</i> , thou hadst loved.	<i>amā-vissēs</i> , thou hadst, mightst, or shouldst have loved.
<i>amā-vērāt</i> , he had loved.	<i>amā-vissēt</i> , he had, &c.
Plur. <i>amā-vērāmus</i> , we had loved.	Plur. <i>amā-vissēm</i> us, we had, &c.
<i>amā-vērātis</i> , you had loved.	<i>amā-vissētis</i> , you had, &c.
<i>amā-vērant</i> , they had loved.	<i>amā-vissent</i> , they had, &c.

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- Sing. *amā-vēro*, I shall have loved.
amā-vēris, thou wilt have loved.
amā-vērit; he will have loved.
 Plur. *amā-vērimus*, we shall have loved.
amā-vēritis, you will have loved.
amā-vērint, they will have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive does
not exist.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

- Sing. *amā*, love thou.
 Plur. *amā-tē*, love ye.

FUTURE.

- Sing. *amā-to*, thou shalt love.
amā-to, he shall love.
 Plur. *amā-tōte*, ye shall love.
ama-nto, they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

- Present, *amā-rē*, to love.
 Perfect, *amā-visse*, to have loved.
 Future, *amā-tūrum* (*am*, *um*) *esse*, to be about to love.

GERUND.

- Gen. *ama-ndi*, of loving.
 Dat. *ama-ndō*, to loving.
 Acc. *ama-ndum*, loving.
 Abl. *ama-ndō*, with or by loving.

SUPINE.

amā-tum (in order), to love; and *amā-tu*, to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

- Present, *ama-ns*, loving.
 Future, *amā-tūrus*, being about to love.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Sing. <i>amōr</i> , I am loved.

<i>amā-ris</i> , or <i>re</i> , thou art loved.

<i>amā-tūr</i> , he is loved. | Sing. <i>am-ēr</i> , I am loved, or may be loved.
<i>am-ēris</i> , or <i>am-ērē</i> , thou art loved, or mayst be loved.
<i>am-ētūr</i> , he is loved, &c. |
|---|--|

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
Plur. <i>amā-mūr</i> , we are loved. <i>amā-mīnī</i> , you are loved. <i>amā-ntūr</i> , they are loved.	Plur. <i>am-ēmūr</i> , we are loved, &c. <i>am-ēmīnī</i> , you are loved, &c. <i>am-entūr</i> , they are loved, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Sing. <i>amā-bār</i> , I was loved, or was being loved. <i>amā-bāris</i> , or <i>bāre</i> , thou wert loved, &c. <i>amā-bātūr</i> , he was loved, &c. Plur. <i>amā - bāmūr</i> , we were loved, &c. <i>amā - bāmīnī</i> , you were loved, &c. <i>amā - bantūr</i> , they were loved, &c.	Sing. <i>amā-rēr</i> , I was, might be, or should be loved. <i>amā-rēris</i> , or <i>rērē</i> , thou wert, mightst be, or shouldst be loved. <i>amā-rētūr</i> , he was, &c. Plur. <i>amā-rēmūr</i> , we were, &c. <i>amā-rēmīnī</i> , you were, &c. <i>amā-rentūr</i> , they were, &c.
FUTURE.	
Sing. <i>amā-bōr</i> , I shall be loved. <i>amā-bēris</i> , or <i>bērē</i> , thou wilt be loved. <i>amā-bitūr</i> , he will be loved. Plur. <i>amā-bīmūr</i> , we shall be loved. <i>amā-bīmīnī</i> , you will be loved. <i>amā-buntūr</i> , they will be loved.	The subjunctive is wanting.
PERFECT.	
Sing. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>sum</i> , I was, or have been loved. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>es</i> , thou wert, or hast been loved. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>est</i> , he was, or has been loved.	Sing. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>sim</i> , I have been, or may have been loved. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>sis</i> , thou hast been, &c. <i>amā-tūs</i> (<i>ā, um</i>) <i>sit</i> , he has been, &c.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

Plur. *amā-ti* (ae, ā) *sumus*,
we were, &c.
amā-ti (ae, ā) *estis*, you
were, &c.
amā-ti (ae, ā) *sunt*, they
were, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plur. *amā-ti* (ae, ā) *simus*, we
have been, &c.
amā-ti (ae, ā) *sitis*, you
have been, &c.
amā-ti (ae, ā) *sint*, they
have been, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *ama-tus* (a, um) *eram*, I
had been loved.

ama-tus (a, um) *eras*,
thou hadst been loved.
ama-tus (a, um) *erat*, he
had been loved.

Plur. *ama-ti* (ae, a) *eramus*,
we had been loved.
ama-ti (ae, a) *eratis*, you
had been loved.
ama-ti (ae, a) *erant*, they
had been loved.

Sing. *ama-tus* (a, um) *essem*,
I had been, might,
or should have been
loved.

ama-tus (a, um) *esses*,
thou hadst been, &c.
ama-tus (a, um) *esset*,
he had been, &c.

Plur. *ama-ti* (ae, a) *essemus*,
we had been, &c.
ama-ti (ae, a) *essetis*, you
had been, &c.
ama-ti (ae, a) *essent*,
they had been, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. *ama-tus* (a, um) *ero*, I
shall have been loved.
ama-tus (a, um) *eris*,
thou wilt have been
loved.

ama-tus (a, um) *erit*, he
will have been loved.

Plur. *ama-ti* (ae, a) *erimus*, we
shall have been loved.
ama-ti (ae, a) *eritis*, you
will have been loved.
ama-ti (ae, a) *erunt*, they
will have been loved.

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *amā-rē*, be thou loved.

FUTURE.

Sing. *amā-tōr*, thou shalt be
loved.
amā-tōr, he shall be
loved.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Plur. *amā-mini*, be ye loved.

FUTURE.

Plur. *amā-bimini*, ye shall be loved.
amā-ntōr, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *amā-ri*, to be loved.Perfect, *ama-tum* (*am*, *um*) *esse*, to have been loved.Future, *ama-tum iri*, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *ama-tus*, *a*, *um*, loved.Gerundive, *ama-ndus*, deserving or requiring to be loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

mōnē-ō.

PERFECT.

mōn-ūi.

SUPINE.

mōn-ū-tum.

INFINITIVE.

mōnē-rē.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *mōne-o*, I advise.*mōnē-s*, thou advisest.*mōnē-t*, he advises.Plur. *mōnē-mus*, we advise.*mōnē-tis*, you advise.*mōnē-nt*, they advise.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *monē-am*, I advise, or may advise.*monē-ās*, thou advisest, or mayst advise.*monē-āt*, he advises, &c.Plur. *monē-āmus*, we advise, &c.*monē-ātis*, you advise, &c.*monē-ant*, they advise, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *monē-bam*, I was advising, or I advised.*monē-bās*, thou wert advising, or advisedst.*monē-bāt*, he was advising, &c.Sing. *monē-rem*, I advised, might, or should advise.*monē-rēs*, thou advisedst, mightst, or wouldst advise.*monē-rēt*, he advised, &c.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Plur. *monē-bāmūs*, we were
advising, &c.
monē-bātis, you were
advising, &c.
monē-bant, they were
advising, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing. *monē-bo*, I shall advise.

monē-bis, thou wilt ad-
vise.

monē-bit, he will advise.

Plur. *monē-bimūs*, we shall
advise.
monē-bitis, you will ad-
vise.
monē-bunt, they will
advise.

PERFECT.

Sing. *mon-uī*, I advised, or
have advised.
mon-ūstī, thou ad-
visedst, or hast ad-
vised.
mon-ūit, he advised, &c.

Plur. *mon-ūimūs*, we advised,
&c.
mon-ūistis, you advised,
&c.
mon-ūerunt, or *ēre*, they
advised, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *mon-uērām*, I had ad-
vised.

mon-uērās, thou hadst
advised.

mon-uērāt, he had ad-
vised.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plur. *monē-rēmūs*, we advised,
&c.
monē-rētis, you advised,
&c.
monē-rent, they advised,
&c.

Sing. *monī-tūrus (a, um) sim*,
I shall, or may be
about to advise.
monī-tūrus (a, um) sis,
thou wilt, or mayst
be about to advise.
monī-tūrus (a, um) sit,
he will, &c.

Plur. *monī-tūri (ae, a) simus*,
we shall, &c.
monī-tūri (ae, a) sitis,
you will, &c.
monī-tūri (ae, a) sint,
they will, &c.

Sing. *mon-uērim*, I have, or
may have advised.
mon-uērīs, thou hast, or
mayst have advised.

mon-uērīt, he has ad-
vised, &c.

Plur. *mon-uērīmūs*, we have
advised, &c.
mon-uērītis, you have
advised, &c.
mon-uērint, they have
advised, &c.

Sing. *mon-uissem*, I had,
might, or should have
advised.
mon-uissēs, thou hadst,
mightst, or shouldst
have advised.
mon-uissēt, he had ad-
vised, &c.

INDICATIVE.	PLUPERFECT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Plur. <i>mon-uērāmūs</i> , we had advised. <i>mon-uērātīs</i> , you had advised. <i>mon-uērant</i> , they had advised.		Plur. <i>mon-uissēmūs</i> , we had advised, &c. <i>mon-uissētīs</i> , you had advised, &c. <i>mon-uissent</i> , they had advised, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.
Sing. <i>mon-uēro</i> , I shall have advised. <i>mon-uēris</i> , thou wilt have advised. <i>mon-uērit</i> , he will have advised. Plur. <i>mon-uērīmūs</i> , we shall have advised. <i>mon-uēritīs</i> , you will have advised. <i>mon-uērint</i> , they will have advised.

The subjunctive is wanting.

PRESENT.	IMPERATIVE.	FUTURE.
Sing. <i>monē</i> , advise thou.		Sing. <i>monē-to</i> , thou shalt advise.
Plur. <i>monē-te</i> , advise ye.		<i>monē-to</i> , he shall advise. Plur. <i>monē-tōte</i> , ye shall advise. <i>monē-nto</i> , they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.
Present, <i>mōnē-rē</i> , to advise. Perfect, <i>mōn-ūissē</i> , to have advised. Future, <i>mōnī-tūrum</i> (<i>am, um</i>) <i>esse</i> , to be about to advise.

GERUND.
Gen. <i>mone-ndī</i> , of advising. Dat. <i>mone-ndō</i> , to advising. Acc. <i>mone-ndum</i> , advising. Abl. <i>mone-ndō</i> , with, in, or by advising.

SUPINE.
<i>monī-tum</i> (in order), to advise; <i>monī-tū</i> , to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.
Present, <i>mone-ns</i> , advising. Future, <i>monī-tūrus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , being about to advise.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *moně-or*, I am, or am
being advised.
moně-ris, or *re*, thou art
advised.

moně-tūr, he is advised.

Plur. *moně-mūr*, we are ad-
vised.
moně-mīnī, you are ad-
vised.
mone-ntūr, they are ad-
vised.

Sing. *moně-ar*, I am advised,
or may be advised.
mone-āris, or *ārē*, thou
art advised, or mayst
be advised.
mone-ātūr, he is advised,
&c.

Plur. *mone-āmūr*, we are ad-
vised, &c.
mone-āmīnī, you are ad-
vised, &c.
mone-antūr, they are
advised, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *moně-bār*, I was advised,
or was being advised.

moně-bāris, or *bāre*, thou
wert advised, &c.

moně-bātūr, he was ad-
vised.

Plur. *moně-bāmūr*, we were
advised.
moně-bāmīnī, you were
advised.
moně-bantūr, they were
advised.

Sing. *moně-rēr*, I was advised,
might, or should be
advised.

moně-rēris, or *rēre*,
thou wert advised,
mightst, or shouldst
be advised.

moně-rētūr, he was ad-
vised, &c.

Plur. *moně-rēmūr*, we were
advised, &c.
moně-rēmīnī, you were
advised, &c.
moně-rentūr, they were
advised, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing. *moně-bōr*, I shall be ad-
vised.

moně-bēris, or *bērē*, thou
wilt be advised.

moně-bītūr, he will be
advised.

Plur. *moně-bīmūr*, we shall be
advised.

moně-bīmīnī, you will
be advised.

moně-buntūr, they will
be advised.

The subjunctive is wanting.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

- Sing. *monŭ-tŭs (a, um) sum*, I was, or have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) es, thou wert, or hast been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) est, he was, &c.
 Plur. *monŭ-ti (ae, a) sumus*, we were, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) estis, you were, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) sunt, they were, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- Sing. *monŭ-tŭs (a, um) sim*, I have been, or may have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) sis, thou hast been, or mayst have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) sit, he has been, &c.
 Plur. *monŭ-ti (ae, a) simus*, we have been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) sitis, you have been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) sint, they have been, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

- Sing. *monŭ-tŭs (a, um) eram*, I had been advised.
monŭ-tŭs (a, um) eras, thou hadst been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) erat, he had been advised.
 Plur. *monŭ-ti (ae, a) eramus*, we had been advised.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) eratis, you had been advised.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) erant, they had been advised.

- Sing. *monŭ-tŭs (a, um) essem*, I had been, might, or should have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) esses, thou hadst been, &c.
monŭ-tus (a, um) esset, he had been, &c.
 Plur. *monŭ-ti (ae, a) essemus*, we had been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) essetis, you had been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) essent, they had been, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- Sing. *monŭ-tŭs (a, um) ero*, I shall have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) eris, thou wilt have been advised.
monŭ-tus (a, um) erit, he will have been, &c.
 Plur. *monŭ-ti (ae, a) erimus*, we shall have been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) eritis, you will have been, &c.
monŭ-ti (ae, a) erunt, they will have been, &c.

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *monē-rě*, be thou advised.Plur. *monē-mīnī*, be ye advised.

FUTURE.

Sing. *monē-tor*, thou shalt be advised.*monē-tor*, he shall be advised.Plur. *monē-bīmīnī*, ye shall be advised.*mone-ntor*, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *monē-rī*, to be advised.Perfect, *monī-tum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been advised.Future, *monī-tum iri*, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *mōnī-tūs, a, um*, advised.Gerundive, *mōne-ndūs, a, um*, deserving, or requiring to be advised.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

lēg-ō.

PERFECT.

lēg-ī.

SUPINE.

lēc-tum.

INFINITIVE.

lēg-ērē.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *lēg-ō*, I read.*lēg-īs*, thou readest.*lēg-īt*, he reads.Plur. *lēg-īmūs*, we read.*lēg-ītīs*, you read.*lēg-unt*, they read.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *lēg-am*, I read, or may read.*lēg-ās*, thou readest, or mayst read.*lēg-āt*, he reads, &c.Plur. *lēg-āmūs*, we read, &c.*lēg-ātīs*, you read, &c.*lēg-ant*, they read, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *lēg-ēbam*, I read, or was reading.*lēg-ēbās*, thou readest, or wert reading.*lēg-ēbāt*, he read, &c.Sing. *lēg-ērem*, I read, might, or should read.*lēg-ērēs*, thou readest, mightst, or wouldst read.*lēg-ērēt*, he read, &c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Plur. <i>leg-ē-bāmūs</i> , we read, &c.	Plur. <i>leg-ē-rēmūs</i> , we read, &c.
<i>leg-ē-bātis</i> , you read, &c.	<i>leg-ē-rētis</i> , you read, &c.
<i>leg-ē-bant</i> , they read, &c.	<i>leg-ē-rent</i> , they read, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing. <i>leg-am</i> , I shall read.	Sing. <i>lec-tūrūs</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sim</i> , I shall, or may be about to read.
<i>leg-ēs</i> , thou wilt read.	<i>lec-tūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sis</i> , thou wilt, or mayst be about to read.
<i>leg-ēt</i> , he will read.	<i>lec-tūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>sit</i> , he will, &c.
Plur. <i>leg-ēmūs</i> , we shall read.	Plur. <i>lec-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>simus</i> , we shall, &c.
<i>leg-ētis</i> , you will read.	<i>lec-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>sitis</i> , you will, &c.
<i>leg-ent</i> , they will read.	<i>lec-tūri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>sint</i> , they will, &c.

PERFECT.

Sing. <i>leg-ī</i> , I read, or have read.	Sing. <i>leg-ērīm</i> , I have read, or may have read.
<i>leg-istī</i> , thou readst, or hast read.	<i>leg-ērīs</i> , thou hast read, or mayst have read.
<i>lēg-īt</i> , he read, or has read.	<i>leg-ērīt</i> , he has read, &c.
Plur. <i>leg-īmūs</i> , we read, or have read.	Plur. <i>leg-ērīmus</i> , we have read, &c.
<i>leg-istis</i> , you read, or have read.	<i>leg-ērītis</i> , you have read, &c.
<i>leg-ērunt</i> , or <i>ēre</i> , they read, or have read.	<i>leg-ērint</i> , they have read, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. <i>leg-eram</i> , I had read.	Sing. <i>leg-issem</i> , I had, might have, or should have read.
<i>leg-erās</i> , thou hadst read.	<i>leg-issēs</i> , thou hadst, mightst, or wouldst have read.
<i>leg-erāt</i> , he had read.	<i>leg-issēt</i> , he had read, &c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

Plur. <i>leg-ērāmūs</i> , we had read.	Plur. <i>leg-issēmūs</i> , we had read, &c.
<i>leg-ērātīs</i> , you had read.	<i>leg-issētīs</i> , you had read, &c.
<i>leg-ērant</i> , they had read.	<i>leg-issent</i> , they had read, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. <i>leg-ēro</i> , I shall have read.	The subjunctive is wanting.
<i>leg-ērīs</i> , thou wilt have read.	
<i>leg-ērīt</i> , he will have read.	
Plur. <i>leg-ērīmūs</i> , we shall have read.	
<i>leg-ērītīs</i> , you will have read.	
<i>leg-ērint</i> , they will have read.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Sing. <i>leg-ē</i> , read thou.	Sing. <i>leg-ī-to</i> , thou shalt read. <i>leg-ī-to</i> , he shall read.
Plur. <i>leg-ī-te</i> , read ye.	Plur. <i>leg-ī-tōte</i> , you shall read. <i>leg-u-nto</i> , they shall read.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *leg-ērē*, to read.
 Perfect, *leg-isse*, to have read.
 Future, *lec-tūrum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to be about to read.

GERUND.

Gen. *leg-e-ndī*, of reading.
 Dat. *leg-e-ndō*, to reading.
 Acc. *leg-e-ndum*, reading.
 Abl. *leg-e-ndō*, with, by, or in reading.

SUPINE.

lec-tum (in order) to read ; *lec-tū*, to be read.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *leg-e-ns*, reading.
 Future, *lec-tūrus*, about to read.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *leg-or*, I am read.*leg-ĕ-rĭs*, or *rĕ*, thou art read.*leg-ĭ-tŭr*, he is read.Plur. *leg-ĭ-mŭr*, we are read.*leg-ĭ-mĭnĭ*, you are read.*leg-u-ntŭr*, they are read.Sing. *leg-ŕr*, I am read, or I may be read.*leg-ŕrĭs*, thou art read, or mayst be read.*leg-ŕtŭr*, he is read, or may be read.Plur. *leg-ŕmŭr*, we are read, or may be read.*leg-ŕmĭnĭ*, you are read, or may be read.*leg-ŕntŭr*, they are read, or may be read.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *leg-ĕ-bŕr*, I was read, or was being read.*leg-ĕ-bŕrĭs*, or *bŕrĕ*.*leg-ĕ-bŕtŭr*.Plur. *leg-ĕ-bŕmŭr*.*leg-ĕ-bŕmĭnĭ*.*leg-ĕ-bŕntŭr*.Sing. *leg-ĕ-rĕr*, I was read, might be read, or should be read.*leg-ĕ-rĕrĭs*, or *rĕrĕ*.*leg-ĕ-rĕtŭr*.Plur. *leg-ĕ-rĕmŭr*.*leg-ĕ-rĕmĭnĭ*.*leg-ĕ-rĕntŭr*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *leg-ŕr*, I shall be read.*leg-ŕrĭs*, or *ŕrĕ*.*leg-ŕtŭr*.Plur. *leg-ŕmŭr*.*leg-ŕmĭnĭ*.*leg-ŕntŭr*.

The subjunctive is wanting.

PERFECT.

Sing. *lec-tŭs* (*a, um*) *sum*, I was read, or have been read.*lec-tus* (*a, um*) *es*.*lec-tus* (*a, um*) *est*.Plur. *lec-tĭ* (*ae, a*) *sumus*.*lec-ti* (*ae, a*) *estis*.*lec-ti* (*ae, a*) *sunt*.Sing. *lec-tus* (*a, um*) *sim*, I have, or may have been read.*lec-tus* (*a, um*) *sis*.*lec-tus* (*a, um*) *sit*.Plur. *lec-ti* (*ae, a*) *simus*.*lec-ti* (*ae, a*) *sitis*.*lec-ti* (*ae, a*) *sint*.

INDICATIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *lec-tus (a, um) eram*, I
had been read.

lec-tus (a, um) eras.

lec-tus (a, um) erat.

Plur. *lec-ti (ae, a) eramus.*

lec-ti (ae, a) eratis.

lec-ti (ae, a) erant.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. *lec-tus (a, um) essem*, I
had been, might, or
should have been
read.

lec-tus (a, um) esses.

lec-tus (a, um) esset.

Plur. *lec-ti (ae, a) essemus.*

lec-ti (ae, a) essetis.

lec-ti (ae, a) essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. *lec-tus (a, um) ero*, I
shall have been read.

lec-tus (a, um) eris.

lec-tus (a, um) erit.

Plur. *lec-ti (ae, a) erimus.*

lec-ti (ae, a) eritis.

lec-ti (ae, a) erunt.

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *leg-ĕrĕ*, be thou read.

Plur. *leg-ĭ-mĭnĭ*, be ye read.

FUTURE.

Sing. *leg-ĭ-tŏr*, thou shalt be
read.

leg-ĭ-tŏr, he shall be read.

Plur. *leg-ĕ-mĭnĭ*, ye shall be
read.

leg-u-ntŏr, they shall
be read.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *leg-ĭ*, to be read.

Perfect, *lec-tum (am, um) esse*, to have been read.

Future, *lec-tum iri*, to be about to be read.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *lec-tŭs, a, um*, read.

Gerundive, *leg-e-ndus, a, um*, requiring, or deserving to be
read.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>audi-ō.</i>	<i>audi-vī.</i>	<i>audi-tum.</i>	<i>audi-rē.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *audi-o*, I hear.*audi-s.**audi-t.*Plur. *audi-mūs.**audi-tis.**audi-u-nt.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *audi-ām*, I hear, or may hear.*audi-ās.**audi-āt.*Plur. *audi-amūs.**audi-ātis.**audi-ant.*

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *audi-ē-bam*, I heard, or was hearing.*audi-ē-bās.**audi-ē-bāt.*Plur. *audi-ē-bamūs.**audi-ē-bātis.**audi-ē-bant.*Sing. *audi-rem*, I heard, might, or should hear.*audi-rēs.**audi-rēt.*Plur. *audi-rēmūs.**audi-rētis.**audi-rent.*

FUTURE.

Sing. *audi-am*, I shall hear.*audi-ās.**audi-āt.*Plur. *audi-amūs.**audi-ātis.**audi-ent.*Sing. *audi-tūrus* (*a, um*) *sim*, I shall, or may be about to hear.*audi-tūrus* (*a, um*) *sis.**audi-tūrus* (*a, um*) *sit.*Plur. *audi-turi* (*ae, a*) *simus.**audi-turi* (*ae, a*) *sitis.**audi-turi* (*ae, a*) *sint.*

PERFECT.

Sing. *audi-vī*, I heard, or have heard.*audi-vistī.**audi-vit.*Plur. *audi-vimūs.**audi-vistis.**audi-vērunt*, or *vērē.*Sing. *audi - vērim*, I have heard, or may have heard.*audi-vēris.**audi-vērit.*Plur. *audi-vērimūs.**audi-vēritis.**audi-vērint.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PLUPERFECT.	
Sing.	<i>audī-vēram</i> , I had heard.	Sing.	<i>audī-vissem</i> , I had heard, or I might or should have heard.
	<i>audī-vērās.</i> <i>audī-vērāt.</i>		<i>audī-vissēs.</i> <i>audī-vissēt.</i>
Plur.	<i>audī-vērāmūs.</i> <i>audī-vērātīs.</i> <i>audī-vērant.</i>	Plur.	<i>audī-vissēmūs.</i> <i>audī-vissētīs.</i> <i>audī-vissent.</i>

		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Sing.	<i>audī-vēro</i> , I shall have heard. <i>audī-vērīs.</i> <i>audī-vērīt.</i>		The subjunctive is wanting.
Plur.	<i>audī-vērīmūs.</i> <i>audī-vērītīs.</i> <i>audī-vērint.</i>		

		IMPERATIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
Sing.	<i>audī</i> , hear thou.		FUTURE.
Plur.	<i>audī-tē</i> , hear ye.		
		Sing.	<i>audī-to</i> , thou shalt hear. <i>audī-to</i> , he shall hear.
		Plur.	<i>audī-tōtē</i> , you shall hear. <i>audī-u-nto</i> , they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *audī-rē*, to hear.
 Perfect, *audī-vissē*, to have heard.
 Future, *audī-tūrum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to be about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. *audī-e-ndī*, of hearing.
 Dat. *audī-e-ndō*, to hearing.
 Acc. *audī-e-ndum*, hearing.
 Abl. *audī-e-ndō*, with, by, or in hearing.

SUPINE.

audī-tum (in order), to hear; *audī-tū*, to hear.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *audī-e-ns*, hearing.
 Future, *audī-tūrus*, about to hear.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *audi-or*, I am heard.*audi-ris*, or *rē*.*audi-tūr*.Plur. *audi-mūr*.*audi-mīni*.*audi-u-ntur*.Sing. *audi-ār*, I am heard, or
may be heard.*audi-āris*.*audi-ātūr*.Plur. *audi-āmūr*.*audi-āmīni*.*audi-antūr*.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *audi-ē-bar*, I was heard,
or being heard.*audi-ē-bāris*, or *bārē*.*audi-ē-bātūr*.Plur. *audi-ē-bāmūr*.*audi-ē-bāmīni*.*audi-ē-bantūr*.Sing. *audi-rēr*, I was heard,
might, or should be
heard.*audi-rērīs*, or *rērē*.*audi-rētūr*.Plur. *audi-rēmūr*.*audi-rēmīni*.*audi-rentūr*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *audi-ār*, I shall be heard.*audi-ērīs*.*audi-ētūr*.Plur. *audi-ēmūr*.*audi-ēmīni*.*audi-entūr*.

The subjunctive is wanting.

PERFECT.

Sing. *audi-tūs* (*a, um*) *sum*, I
was heard, or have
been heard.*audi-tus* (*a, um*) *es*.*audi-tus* (*a, um*) *est*.Plur. *audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *sumus*.*audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *estis*.*audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *sunt*.Sing. *audi-tūs* (*a, um*) *sim*, I
have been heard, or
may have been heard.*audi-tus* (*a, um*) *sis*.*audi-tus* (*a, um*) *sit*.Plur. *audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *simus*.*audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *sitis*.*audi-tī* (*ae, a*) *sint*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *audī-tūs (a, um) eram, I*
had been heard.

Sing. *audī-tūs (a, um) essem,*
I had been heard,
might, or should have
been heard.

audī-tus (a, um) eras.
audī-tus (a, um) erat.
Plur. *audī-tī (ae, a) eramus.*
audī-ti (ae, a) eratis.
audī-ti (ae, a) erant.

audī-tus (a, um) esses.
audī-tus (a, um) esset.
Plur. *audī-tī (ae, a) essemus.*
audī-ti (ae, a) essetis.
audī-ti (ae, a) essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. *audī-tūs (a, um) ero, I*
shall have been heard.
audī-tus (a, um) eris.
audī-tus (a, um) erit.
Plur. *audī-tī (ae, a) erimus.*
audī-ti (ae, a) eritis.
audī-ti (ae, a) erunt.

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Sing. *audī-rē, be thou heard.*

Sing. *audī-tōr, thou shalt be*
heard.

audī-tōr, he shall be
heard.

Plur. *audī-mīnī, be ye heard.*

Plur. *audī-ēmīnī, ye shall be*
heard.

audī-untōr, they shall be
heard.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *audī-rī, to be heard.*

Perfect, *audī-tum (am, um) esse, to have been heard.*

Future, *audī-tum iri, to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *audī-tūs (a, um), heard.*

Gerundive, *audī-e-ndūs, deserving, or requiring to be heard.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

133. Deponent verbs being in form passives, are conjugated like them, and follow the four regular conjugations. Those whose stems end in *ā*, *ē*, and *i*, follow the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and all the rest belong to the third. But the conjugation of a deponent verb has more forms than the ordinary passive; for it has not only the supine and the gerund, but also four participles: the participle present—as *hortans* (admonishing), denoting the action in progress; perfect *hortatus* (admonished), denoting the action as completed; future *hortaturus* (about to admonish), describing an action as future; and the gerundive *hortandus* (to be admonished), which has a passive meaning, and accordingly is formed only from those deponents which have a transitive signification. In the neuter gender, however, it occurs also from intransitive verbs.

DEPONENT VERBS.

134. DEPONENTS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
	INDICATIVE.			
Present,	<i>hort-or</i> , I admonish.	<i>vere-or</i> , I fear.	<i>ut-or</i> , I use.	<i>parti-or</i> , I distribute.
Imperfect,	<i>hort-ā-ris</i> (e), &c. (like <i>am-or</i> .)	<i>verē-ris</i> (e), &c. (like <i>mone-or</i> .)	<i>ut-ē-ris</i> , &c. (like <i>leg-or</i> .)	<i>parti-ris</i> , &c. (like <i>audi-or</i> .)
Future,	<i>hortā-bar</i> .	<i>verē-bar</i> .	<i>ut-ē-bar</i> .	<i>parti-ē-bar</i> .
Perfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) sum.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) sum.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) sum.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) sum.
Pluperfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) eram.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) eram.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) eram.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) eram.
Fut. Perfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) ero.
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Present,	<i>hort-er</i> .	<i>vere-ar</i> .	<i>ut-ar</i> .	<i>parti-ar</i> .
Imperfect,	<i>hortā-ret</i> .	<i>verē-ret</i> .	<i>ut-ē-ret</i> .	<i>parti-tus</i> .
Future,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) sim.
Perfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) sim.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) sim.
Pluperfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) essem.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) essem.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) essem.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) essem.
Fut. Perfect,	<i>hortā-tus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>ver-tus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>u-sus</i> (a, um) ero.	<i>parti-tus</i> (a, um) ero.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
		IMPERATIVE.		
Present, Future,	<i>hortā-re.</i> <i>hortā-tor.</i>	<i>verē-re.</i> <i>verē-tor.</i>	<i>ut-ē-re.</i> <i>ut-ē-tor.</i>	<i>parti-re.</i> <i>parti-tor.</i>
		INFINITIVE.		
Present, Perfect, Future,	<i>hortā-rī.</i> <i>hortā-tum (am, um) esse.</i> <i>hortā-turum (am, um) esse.</i>	<i>verē-rī.</i> <i>verē-tum (am, um) esse.</i> <i>verē-turum (am, um) esse.</i>	<i>ut-ī.</i> <i>u-sum (am, um) esse.</i> <i>u-surum (am, um) esse.</i>	<i>parti-rī.</i> <i>parti-tum (am, um) esse.</i> <i>parti-turum (am, um) esse.</i>
		SUPINE.		
	<i>hortā-tum, hortā-ta.</i>	<i>verē-tum, verē-tu.</i>	<i>u-sum, u-sa.</i>	<i>parti-tum, parti-tu.</i>
	<i>hortā-ndum, &c.</i>	<i>verē-ndum, &c.</i>	<i>ut-e-ndum, &c.</i>	
		GERUND.		
		PAETICIPLES.		
Present, Perfect, Future, Gerundive,	<i>hortā-us.</i> <i>hortā-tus, a, um.</i> <i>hortā-turus, a, um.</i> <i>hortā-ndus, a, um.</i>	<i>verē-us.</i> <i>verē-tus, a, um.</i> <i>verē-turus, a, um.</i> <i>verē-ndus, a, um.</i>	<i>ut-e-us.</i> <i>u-sus, a, um.</i> <i>u-surus, a, um.</i> <i>ut-e-ndus, a, um.</i>	<i>parti-e-us.</i> <i>parti-tus, a, um.</i> <i>parti-turus, a, um.</i> <i>parti-e-ndus, a, um.</i>

PECULIAR AND CONTRACTED FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

135. The perfects ending in *vi*, as well as the tenses formed from them (namely, the pluperfect, future perfect, and the infinitive perfect), sometimes appear in a syncopated form—that is, the *v* is thrown out, and the two vowels thus following one another are contracted into one. This is the case—

1. When in the first conjugation *vi* or *ve* is followed by *r* or *s* the *v* is omitted, and the *a* of the stem is contracted with *i* or *e* into *ā*—as *amāsti*, *amāsse*, *amārim*, *amārun*t, *amāram*, *amāro*, for *amavisti*, *amavisse*, *amāverim*, *amaverunt*, *amaveram*, and *amavero*. The same is the case with verbs of the second and third conjugations forming their perfects in (*ē*)*vi*—as *flestis*, *fleerunt*, *fleam*, &c. ; *nēsti*, *nēstis*, *nērun*t ; *delēram*, *decrēsse* for *flevistis*, *fleverunt*, *fleveram*, &c. ; *nevisti*, *nevistis*, *neverunt* ; *deleveram*, *decrevisse*. So also *siris*, *sirit*, for *siveris*, *siverit*, from *sino*, I allow. Perfects ending in (*o*)*vi* are generally not contracted, and the only verbs in which a contraction does occur are *nōvi* (from *nosco*) and the compounds of *moveo*—as *nōsti*, *nōrun*t, *nōram*, *nōrim*, for *novisti*, *noverunt*, *noveram*, *noverim* (but we never find *noro* for *novero*) ; *commōsse* for *commovisse*, from *commoveo*.
2. In verbs making their perfect in (*i*)*vi*, the *v* is simply thrown out when *s* follows—thus *audivisse*, *audivissem*, become *audīsse*, *audiissem* ; but here also the double *i* may be contracted into one—as *audīsse*, *audiissem* ; so also *petisse* or *petiisse*, from *peto*, perf. *petivi*. In those forms where the *v* is followed by *e*, the *v* is thrown out without any contraction taking place—as *audierunt*, *audieram*, *desierunt*, *definieram*, *quaesieram*, for *audiverunt*, *audiveram*, *desiverunt*, *definiveram*, *quaesiveram*.
3. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active we very often find the termination *ēre* for *ērunt*—as *amavēre*, *monuēre*, *legēre*, *audivēre*, for *amavērunt*, *monuērunt*, *legērunt*, *audivērunt*. Poets sometimes use the termination *ērunt* with the *e* short—as *stetērunt* for *stetērunt*.

The second person singular in passive and deponent verbs generally ends in *ris* ; but another termination equally common is *re*—as *amābaris* and *amābare* ; *amareris*, *amarere* ; *amaberis*, *amabere* ; in the second person of the present indicative, however, the termination *re* occurs very rarely—as *arbitrare* for *arbitraris*. In the fourth conjugation *re* is never used for *ris* in the present indicative.

Verbs of the third conjugation, of which the stem ends in a consonant, usually take *e* in the present imperative ; but the verbs *dico*, I say ; *duco*, I lead ; *facio*, I do ; and *fero*, I bear, form their imperatives without *e*—as *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*. The same is the case in their compounds—as *educ*, from *educo* ; *affer* and *refer*, from *affero* and *refero*. Of *facio*, only those compounds follow this rule in which the *a* is retained—as *calefac* from *calefacio* ; but all the other compounds in which the *a* is changed into *i* are regularly formed—as *confice*, *perfice*, *effice*, from *conficio*, *perficio*, *efficio*.

Many verbs of the third and fourth conjugations take *u* as the connecting vowel instead of *e* in forming the gerundive. This is done especially when *i* precedes—as *fac-i-undus* for *faci-e-ndus* ; *poti-u-ndus*

for *poti-e-ndus* ; but we also find *divid-u-ndus*, *reg-u-ndus*, for *divid-e-ndus*, *reg-e-ndus* ; and *dic-u-ndus* for *dic-e-ndus*.

Some verbs, chiefly intransitive (both active and deponent), form a sort of participle in *bundus*, *a, um*. In the first conjugation, where this form occurs most frequently, *bundus* is added to the stem—as *cuncta-bundus*, *delibera-bundus*, *mira-bundus*, &c. In the third conjugation either *i* or *e* is prefixed to *bundus*—as *fur-i-bundus*, *mor-i-bundus*, *jrem-e-bundus*, *trem-e-bundus*. In the second and fourth conjugations such participles scarcely ever occur. Their meaning is like that of the present participle, but somewhat stronger ; so that *furibundus* is ‘full of fury,’ whereas *furens* is only ‘furious.’ When they are derived from transitive verbs they may, like other participles, govern the case of their verb.

CONJUGATION BY PERIPHRAISIS OR CIRCUMLOCUTION.

136. A conjugation by circumlocution might be formed by means of the verb *esse* in conjunction with any participle ; but the Latin language does not possess that conjugation which is formed in English by means of the participle present and the verb *esse* ; so that ‘I am loving,’ ‘I was loving,’ &c. cannot be expressed in Latin otherwise than by the simple forms *amo*, *amabam*, &c.

137. *Esse*, in combination with the participle perfect passive, is used to form some of the ordinary tenses of the passive voice, as perf. *amatus sum* and *amatus sim* ; pluperf. *amatus eram* and *amatus essem* ; fut. perf. *amatus ero* ; infin. perf. *amatum esse*. But instead of *sum*, *eram*, *ero*, and *esse*, we also find the forms *fui*, *fuera*, *fuero*, and *fuisse*, in quite the same sense as the forms of the tenses denoting an incomplete action ; so that *amatus sum* is equivalent to *amatus fui*, *amatus eram* to *amatus fuera*, *amatus ero* to *amatus fuero*, and *amatum esse* to *amatum fuisse*. Hence, as far as form is concerned, we here have a complete periphrastic conjugation.

138. A real and complete periphrastic conjugation is formed by means of the verb *esse* with the participle future active. Throughout this conjugation the action is represented as one that will take place, or is to take place ; *e. g.*—

INDICATIVE.

Present, *dicturus sum*, I am
about to say.

Imperfect, *dicturus eram*, I
was about to say.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present, *dicturus sim*, I am
about to say, or
may be about to
say.

Imperfect, *dicturus essem*, I
was, might be, or
should be, about
to say.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Future, <i>dicturus ero</i> , I shall be about to say.	No future.
Perfect, <i>dicturus fui</i> , I was, or have been, about to say.	Perfect, <i>dicturus fuerim</i> , I have been, or may have been, about, &c.
Pluperfect, <i>dicturus fueram</i> , I had been about to say.	Pluperfect, <i>dicturus fuisset</i> , I had been, might, or should have been, about, &c.
Fut. Perf. <i>dicturus fuero</i> , I shall have been, &c.	No future perfect.

* No passive can be formed of this periphrastic conjugation ; but its place may be supplied by longer circumlocutions—as *futurum est ut dicatur*, or *in eo est ut dicatur* ; *futurum erat*, or *in eo erat ut diceretur*, &c.

139. A second real and complete periphrastic conjugation is formed by means of the verb *esse* combined with the neuter of the gerundive ; and in this conjugation the action is invariably represented as necessary, and the person by whom it is to be performed is expressed by the dative case ; *e. g.*—

INDICATIVE.

Present, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write.
 Imperfect, *mihi scribendum erat*, I was obliged to write.
 Future, *mihi scribendum erit*, I shall be obliged to write.
 Perfect, *mihi scribendum fuit*, I was, or have been, obliged to write.
 Pluperfect, *mihi scribendum fuerat*, I had been obliged to write.
 Fut. Perf. *mihi scribendum fuerit*, I shall have been obliged to write.

In like manner are formed the subjunctive—as *scribendum sit*, *scribendum esset*, *scribendum fuerit*, *scribendum fuisset*, and the infinitive, *scribendum fuisse*.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE.

140. Many verbs do not form the perfect and supine according to the rules laid down in 128, 129, and 130. Sometimes there is a difference in the termination which is appended to the stem, sometimes the stem itself undergoes a change, and sometimes both kinds of irregularities appear in the same verb. Thus *juvo*, instead of *juva-vi*, makes its perfect *juvi*, and

instead of its supine *juvatum*, makes *jutum*. Again, *frango* makes its perfect *fregi*, and its supine *fractum*. But whatever the apparent irregularity in the perfect and supine may be, the tenses formed from these two are derived from them according to the general rules. (131, *b* and *d*.)

1. We shall in the subjoined lists give only the simple verbs, because, generally speaking, derivative and compound verbs are conjugated like the simple ones. Where, however, the compounds present any difference, they are added. There will be found some verbs which have either no perfect or no supine, or neither of them, and generally in such cases the tenses derived from those two do not exist.

2. The irregularities (so called) of which we are here speaking have mostly arisen from the fact, that the perfect and supine are formed from a more ancient and simpler stem than that which appears in the present; the stem of the present being extended and increased. This extension or increase of the stem consists most frequently—1. In the addition of a vowel (*a, e, or i*) to it—as *son* (*sono*, sound), increased *sona*, but the perfect *sonavi*, and the supine *sonitum*; *rid* (*rideo*, laugh), increased *ride*, but the perfect *risi*, and the supine *risum*; *ven* (*venio*, come), increased *vēni*, but the perfect *vēni*, supine *ventum*: 2. In the addition of *n* to the stem—as *si*, strengthened *sin* (*sino*, allow), perfect *sivi*, supine *situm*; or in the insertion of *n* before the final consonant of the stem, the *n* being sometimes, for reasons of euphony, changed into *m*—as *frang* (original stem *frag*), *frango* (I break), but perfect *frēgi*, supine *fractum*; *rump* (original stem *rup*), *rumpo* (break), but perfect *prēpi*, supine *ruptum*. A few verbs also have a reduplication in the present, which disappears in the perfect and supine—as *gi-gno*, perfect *genui*, supine *genitum* (from the stem *gen*); *si-sto*, perfect *stēti*, supine *statum* (from the stem *sta*.)

The verbs *uro* (*ussi*, *ustum*) and *gero* (*gessi*, *gestum*) have not an extended stem, but *s* of the stem is only changed into its equivalent *r* in the present. Some other merely apparent irregularities in the perfect and supine arise simply from the concurrence of the final letter of the stem with the *s* and *t* with which the terminations of the perfect and supine begin. The supine sometimes adds the termination *tum* to the stem without the connecting vowel, where, according to analogy, we should expect *itum*.

141 The following verbs of the first conjugation and their compounds form their perfect and supine in *ui* and *itum*, as if they belonged to the second conjugation:—

<i>crēpo</i> ,	<i>crēpui</i> ,	<i>creptum</i> ,	sound harshly.
<i>discrepo</i> ,	{ <i>discrepui</i> , or <i>discrepavi</i> ,	<i>discreptum</i> ,	differ.
<i>increpo</i> ,	{ <i>increpavi</i> , or <i>increpui</i> ,	{ <i>increpatum</i> , or <i>increptum</i> ,	scold.
<i>cūbo</i> ,	<i>cūbui</i> ,	<i>cūbitum</i> ,	lie down.

When compounds of *cūbo* take *m* before *b*, as in *incumbo*, they follow the third conjugation.

<i>dōmo</i> ,	<i>dōmui</i> ,	<i>dōmūtum</i> ,	tame, or subdue.
<i>sōno</i> ,	<i>sōnui</i> ,	<i>sōnūtum</i> ,	sound (part. fut. <i>sōnātūrus</i> .)
<i>tōno</i> ,	<i>tōnui</i> ,	<i>tōnūtum</i> ,	thunder. <i>Intono</i> has a partic. <i>intonatus</i> .
<i>vōlo</i> ,	<i>vētui</i> ,	<i>vētūtum</i> ,	forbid.

142. The following have the supine either regular, or throw out the vowel *a* :—

<i>mīco</i> ,	<i>mīcui</i> ,	—	dart, glitter.
<i>ēmīco</i> ,	<i>ēmīcui</i> ,	<i>ēmīcatum</i> ,	dart forth.
<i>dīmīco</i> ,	<i>dīmīcavi</i> ,	<i>dīmīcatum</i> ,	fight.
<i>frīco</i> ,	<i>frīcui</i> ,	{ <i>fricatum</i> , or <i>frictum</i> ,	rub.
<i>sēcō</i> ,	<i>sēcui</i> ,	<i>sectum</i> ,	cut (partic. fut. <i>secaturus</i> .)
<i>nēcō</i> ,	<i>nēcavi</i> ,	<i>necatūm</i> ,	kill ; but <i>eneco</i> has <i>enecui</i> and <i>enecavi</i> , as well as <i>enecui</i> , <i>enectum</i> .

143. The following are peculiar :—

<i>jūvo</i> ,	<i>jūvi</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	support, assist (partic. fut. <i>jūvaturus</i> .)
<i>lāvo</i> ,	<i>lāvi</i> ,	{ <i>lavatum</i> , <i>lautum</i> , <i>lōtum</i> ,	wash. The infinitive is <i>lavēre</i> or <i>lavare</i> .
<i>pōto</i> ,	<i>pōtāvi</i> ,	{ <i>pōtum</i> , or <i>pōtātum</i> ,	drink. <i>Potus</i> means both having drunk and being drunk.
<i>do</i> ,	<i>dēdi</i> ,	<i>dātum</i> , inf. <i>dāre</i> ,	give. Many of the compounds of <i>do</i> belong to the third conjugation — as <i>reddo</i> , <i>addo</i> .
<i>sto</i> ,	<i>stēti</i> ,	<i>stātum</i> ,	stand.
<i>obsto</i> ,	<i>obstēti</i> ,	<i>obstātum</i> ,	oppose.
<i>praesto</i> ,	<i>praestēti</i> ,	<i>praestātum</i> ,	perform, excel (part. fut. <i>prae-</i> <i>stand before</i> . [<i>staturus</i>].)
<i>antesto</i> ,	<i>antestēti</i> ,	—	be at a distance.
<i>disto</i> ,	—	—	fold.
<i>plico</i> ,	—	—	fold.
<i>duplico</i> ,	<i>duplicavi</i> ,	<i>duplicatum</i> ,	double.
<i>applicō</i> ,	{ <i>applicavi</i> , or <i>applicui</i> ,	{ <i>applicatum</i> , or <i>applicitum</i> ,	apply.

The verbs *jūro* (swear) and *coeno* (sup) have a perfect participle which, like *potus*, has an active meaning—*juratus*, ‘one who has sworn,’ and *coenatus*, ‘one who has supped.’

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE.

144. Many verbs of the second conjugation are defective, having no supine, and many have neither perfect nor supine, nor of course any of the forms derived from them. Their irregularity consists in either the perfect or supine, or both of them, being formed as in verbs of the third conjugation.

The short *i* before *tum* is sometimes thrown out. Verbs having *v* before the *e* of the stem are contracted in the perfect and supine—as *moveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, for *mōvui*, *mōvītum*.

145. The following form the perfect by adding *vi*, and the supine by adding *tum* to the stem, like the regular verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, except that *ē* before *tum* is sometimes changed into *i* :—

<i>dēleo</i> ,	<i>dēlēvi</i> ,	<i>dēlētum</i> ,	destroy.
<i>fleo</i> ,	<i>flēvi</i> ,	<i>flētum</i> ,	weep.
<i>neo</i> ,	<i>nēvi</i> ,	<i>nētum</i> ,	spin.
<i>compleo</i> (from the } obsolete <i>pleo</i>), }	<i>complēvi</i> ,	<i>complētum</i> ,	fill up.
<i>vieo</i> ,	<i>viēvi</i> ,	<i>viētum</i> ,	hoop a vessel.
<i>aboleo</i> ,	<i>abolēvi</i> ,	<i>abolētum</i> ,	abolish.
<i>exoleo</i> ,	<i>exolēvi</i> ,	<i>exolētum</i> ,	fade.
<i>inoleo</i> ,	<i>inolēvi</i> ,	{ <i>inolētum</i> , or <i>inolītum</i> ,	come into use.
<i>obsoleo</i> ,	<i>obsolēvi</i> ,	<i>obsolētum</i> ,	become obsolete.

146. Verbs in which the *e* of the stem is preceded by *v* form the perfect and supine by contraction, the perfect ending in *vi*, and the supine in *tum*, which terminations are added to the stem after the removal of the *e* :—

<i>cāveo</i> ,	<i>cāvi</i> ,	<i>cautum</i> ,	take care.
<i>fāveo</i> ,	<i>fāvi</i> ,	<i>fautum</i> ,	favour.
<i>fōveo</i> ,	<i>fōvi</i> ,	<i>fōtum</i> ,	cherish.
<i>mōveo</i> ,	<i>mōvi</i> ,	<i>mōtum</i> ,	move.
<i>vōveo</i> ,	<i>vōvi</i> ,	<i>vūtum</i> ,	vow.
<i>pāveo</i> ,	<i>pāvi</i> ,	—	dread.
<i>ferveo</i> ,	{ <i>fervi</i> , or <i>ferbui</i> ,	—	glow, boil.
<i>conniveo</i> ,	{ <i>connivi</i> , or <i>connixi</i> ,	—	wink, connive.

147. The following have the perfect regular, but throw out the vowel *i* before *tum* of the supine :—

<i>dōceo</i> ,	<i>dōcui</i> ,	<i>doctum</i> ,	teach.
<i>tēneo</i> ,	<i>tēnui</i> ,	<i>tentum</i> ,	hold.
<i>misceo</i> ,	<i>miscui</i> ,	{ <i>mistum</i> , or <i>mixtum</i> ,	<i>mix</i> .
<i>torreo</i> ,	<i>torrui</i> ,	<i>tostum</i> ,	toast.
<i>sorbeo</i> ,	<i>sorbui</i> ,	<i>sorptum</i> ,	sip.
<i>censeo</i> ,	<i>censui</i> ,	<i>censum</i> ,	value, believe.

[pass. also *censitus*. The part. perf.]

148. The following make the perfect in *i*, and the supine in *sum* :—

<i>prandeo</i> ,	<i>prandi</i> ,	<i>pransum</i> ,	breakfast (partic. <i>pransus</i> , having [breakfasted.]
<i>sēdeo</i> ,	<i>sēdi</i> ,	<i>sessum</i> ,	sit.
<i>video</i> ,	<i>vidi</i> ,	<i>visum</i> ,	see.
<i>strideo</i> ,	<i>stridi</i> ,	—	whistle, hiss (also <i>strido</i> , <i>stridēre</i> .)

149. The following form the perfect and supine in the same

manner, but take a reduplication in the perfect, which, however, does not occur in their compounds :—

<i>mordeo,</i>	<i>mōmordi,</i>	<i>morsum,</i>	bite.
<i>pendeo,</i>	<i>pēpendi,</i>	<i>pensum,</i>	hang.
<i>spondeo,</i>	<i>spōpondi,</i>	<i>sponsum,</i>	engage to give.
<i>tondeo,</i>	<i>tōtondi,</i>	<i>tonsum,</i>	shear.

150. The following make the perfect in *si*, and the supine in *tum* :—

<i>augeo,</i>	<i>auxi,</i>	<i>auctum,</i>	increase.
<i>indulgeo,</i>	<i>indulsi,</i>	<i>indultum,</i>	indulge.
<i>torqueo,</i>	<i>torsi,</i>	<i>tortum,</i>	twist.

151. Verbs which have the perfect in *si*, and the supine in *sum* :—

<i>ardeo,</i>	<i>arsī,</i>	<i>arsum,</i>	burn.
<i>haereo,</i>	<i>haesi,</i>	<i>haesum,</i>	cling.
<i>jūbeo,</i>	<i>jussi,</i>	<i>jussum,</i>	command.
<i>māneo,</i>	<i>mansī,</i>	<i>mansum,</i>	remain.
<i>mulceo,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum,</i>	stroke, caress.
<i>mulgeo,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum,</i>	milk.
<i>rīdeo,</i>	<i>rīsi,</i>	<i>rīsum,</i>	laugh.
<i>suādeo,</i>	<i>suāsi,</i>	<i>suāsum,</i>	advise.
<i>tergeo,</i>	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum,</i>	wipe.

152. The following make the perfect in *si*, but have no supine :—

<i>algeo,</i>	<i>alsi,</i>	—	shiver with cold.
<i>frigēo,</i>	<i>frīxi,</i>	—	freeze with cold.
<i>fulgeo,</i>	<i>fulsi,</i>	—	shine brightly.
<i>turgeo,</i>	<i>tursi,</i>	—	swell.
<i>urgeo,</i>	<i>ursi,</i>	—	press, urge.
<i>luceo,</i>	<i>luxi,</i>	—	shine.
<i>lugeo,</i>	<i>luri,</i>	—	mourn.

153. The following are peculiar :—

<i>cio,</i>	<i>cīvi,</i>	<i>cītum,</i>	stir up ; also, <i>cio, cīre, cītum.</i>
<i>audeo,</i>	<i>ausus sum,</i>	—	venture (a semi-deponent.)
<i>gaudeo,</i>	<i>garisus sum,</i>	—	rejoice,
<i>soleo,</i>	<i>solitus sum,</i>	—	am in the habit,

154. Verbs (mostly intransitive) which have neither perfect nor supine :—

<i>adoleo,</i> kindle.	<i>līveo,</i> am pale.
<i>aveo,</i> desire.	<i>(māneo), immineo,</i> am imminent.
<i>calveo,</i> am bald.	<i>maereo,</i> mourn.
<i>cāneo,</i> am gray.	<i>polleo,</i> am strong.
<i>cēreo,</i> wag the tail.	<i>promineo,</i> am prominent.
<i>denseo,</i> grow thick.	<i>rēnideo,</i> shine.
<i>flūveo,</i> am yellow.	<i>scāteō,</i> gush forth.
<i>foeteo,</i> stink.	<i>squāleo,</i> am dirty.
<i>hēbeo,</i> am dull.	<i>ureo,</i> am juicy.
<i>hūmeo,</i> am damp.	<i>vēgeo,</i> am gay.
<i>lacteo,</i> suck.	

155. The following deponents of the second conjugation form their supines irregularly :—

<i>fāteor,</i>	<i>fassum,</i>	confess.
<i>profiteor,</i>	<i>professum,</i>	profess.
<i>misereor,</i>	<i>misēritum</i> and <i>miseritum,</i>	pity.
<i>reor,</i>	<i>rātum,</i>	think.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE.

156. In treating of verbs of the third conjugation, it is particularly necessary to remember the general rules respecting the formation of the perfect and supine. It was observed that verbs, whose stem ends in *u* (or *v*), form their perfect by simply adding *i* to the stem, and the supine by adding *tum*—as *minuo*, perf. *minui*, sup. *minūtum*; *solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*.

157. The following verbs of this kind are regular, but want the supine :—

arguo, I accuse (*argutus*, clear, is an adjective.)

luo, pay, atone for (has, however, a part. fut. *luiturus*. Some compounds form the supine regularly—as *ablūtum*, *elūtum*, *perlūtum*, &c.) (*nuo*, *nod*) occurs only in the compounds *adnuo*, *abnuo*, *renuo*; but *abnuo* has a part. fut. *abnuiturus*.

congruo, agree; and *ingruo*, penetrate.

metuo, fear.

pluo (generally impersonal), rain; the perfect is sometimes *pluvi*, instead of *plui*.

ruo, fall, has a part. fut. *ruīturus*, and rarely a part. perf. *rūtus*, though in compounds this is the common form—as *dirūtus*, *obrūtus*.

158. The following three verbs are irregular :—

<i>fluo,</i>	<i>fluxi,</i>	<i>fluxum,</i>	flow.
<i>struo,</i>	<i>struxi,</i>	<i>structum,</i>	build, pile up.
<i>vivo,</i>	<i>vixi,</i>	<i>victum,</i>	live.

159. Verbs in which the vowel *i* is inserted in the present after the stem, form the perfect and supine from the pure stem without the *i*—as

<i>cāpio,</i>	<i>cēpi,</i>	<i>captum,</i>	take.
<i>concāpio,</i>	<i>concēpi,</i>	<i>conceptum,</i>	conceive.
<i>fācio,</i>	<i>fēci,</i>	<i>factum,</i>	make, do.

The passive of *facio* is *fio*, and so also in its compounds, except in those compounded with a preposition, for they are regular—as *perficio*, *perfēci*, *perfectum*, passive *perficior*. *Conficio*, however, has sometimes *conficior*, and sometimes *confio*; and *deficio* both *deficior* and *defio*.

jacio, *jēci*, *jactum*. When *jacio* is compounded with a preposition, the *a* is changed into *i*—as *conjicio*, *injicio*.

fōdio, *fōdi*, *fossus*, dig.

(*lacio* occurs only in compound verbs, as)—

<i>allicio,</i>	<i>allexi,</i>	<i>allectum,</i>	allure; but <i>elicio</i> makes <i>ēlicui, ēlicūtum.</i>
<i>pario,</i>	<i>pēpēri,</i>	<i>partum,</i>	bring forth, get; part. fut.
<i>quatio,</i>	(<i>quassi</i> not used),	<i>quassum,</i>	shake. [<i>paritūrus.</i>
<i>concutio,</i>	<i>concussi,</i>	<i>concussum,</i>	shake together.
(specio or spicio only in compounds.)			
<i>aspicio,</i>	<i>asperi,</i>	<i>aspectum.</i>	

160. The following are irregular :—

<i>cūpio,</i>	<i>cūpīvi,</i>	<i>cūpītum,</i>	desire.
<i>fūgio,</i>	<i>fūgi,</i>	<i>fūgītum,</i>	flee.
<i>rāpio,</i>	<i>rāpui,</i>	<i>rāptum,</i>	snatch.

161. Verbs ending in *bo* and *po* form the perfect in *psi*, and the supine in *ptum*, according to the laws of euphony—as *scribo, scripsi, scriptum*; *glubo, glupsi, gluptum*.

162. The following form exceptions :—

(*cumbo* only in compounds.)

<i>incumbo,</i>	<i>incubui,</i>	<i>incubitum,</i>	lie upon.
<i>rumpo,</i>	<i>rūpi,</i>	<i>ruptum,</i>	break.
<i>strēpo,</i>	<i>strēpui,</i>	<i>strēptum,</i>	make a noise.
<i>bībo,</i>	<i>bībi,</i>	—	drink.
<i>lambo,</i>	<i>lambi,</i>	—	lick.
<i>scābo,</i>	<i>scābi,</i>	—	scratch.

163. Verbs ending in *co* (not *sco*), *go*, *ho*, *guo*, *quo*, form their perfect in *si*—which, combined with the final letter of the stem, becomes *xi* (*qu* and *gu* = *c*)—and the supine in *tum*, before which the final consonant of the stem is always *c*—as *dico, dixi, dictum*; *tego, texi, tectum*; *traho, traxi, tractum*; *extinguo, extinxi, extinctum*; *coquo, coxi, coctum*.

164. The following deviate from this rule. In some of them the stem is increased in the present, and the simple stem reappears in the supine; thus—

<i>finco,</i>	<i>finxi,</i>	<i>fictum,</i>	feign.
<i>mingo,</i>	<i>minxi,</i>	<i>mictum,</i>	urinate.
<i>pingo,</i>	<i>pinxi,</i>	<i>pictum,</i>	paint.
<i>stringo,</i>	<i>strinxi,</i>	<i>strictum,</i>	press close.
<i>āgo,</i>	<i>ēgi,</i>	<i>actum,</i>	do, drive, act.

In compounds the *a* is generally changed into *i*—as *abigo, redigo*; but *perāgo* and *circumāgo*. *Dēgo* is contracted for *deago*, and *cōgo* for *coago*, perf. *coēgi*, sup. *coactum*.

<i>frango,</i>	<i>frēgi,</i>	<i>fractum,</i>	break.
<i>ico (icio?),</i>	<i>īci,</i>	<i>ictum,</i>	strike.
<i>lēgo,</i>	<i>lēgi,</i>	<i>lectum,</i>	gather, read. In some compounds the <i>e</i> is changed into <i>i</i> —as <i>intelligo, colligo, deligo, eligo</i> .
<i>linquo,</i>	<i>līqui,</i>	(<i>lictum</i>),	leave.

<i>vinco,</i>	<i>vici,</i>	<i>victum,</i>	conquer.
<i>figo,</i>	<i>fixi,</i>	<i>fixum,</i>	fasten.
<i>mergo,</i>	<i>mersi,</i>	<i>mersum,</i>	dip.
<i>spargo,</i>	<i>sparsi,</i>	<i>sparsum,</i>	scatter.
<i>tergo,</i>	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum,</i>	wipe.
<i>vergo,</i>	—	—	incline towards. [<i>parsi.</i>
<i>parco,</i>	<i>pēperci,</i>	<i>parsum,</i>	spare. The perfect is sometimes
<i>pungo,</i>	<i>pūpūgi,</i>	<i>punctum,</i>	prick. The compounds make the
			perfect regularly <i>punxi.</i>
<i>tango,</i>	<i>tēgi,</i>	<i>tactum,</i>	touch. Compounds change the <i>a</i>
			into <i>i</i> —as <i>attingo, attingi, attactum.</i>
<i>pango,</i>	{ <i>panxi,</i> or	{ <i>panctum,</i> or	fix in. This verb, in the sense of
	<i>pēgi,</i>	<i>pactum,</i>	‘bargain,’ makes the perfect
			<i>pēpigi,</i> and the supine <i>pactum.</i>
			Compounds regularly have <i>pēgi</i>
			and <i>pactum.</i>

165. Verbs in *do* form their perfect in *si*, and the supine in *sum*, the *d* being thrown out before these terminations for euphony—as *claudio, clausi, clausum*. There are, however, many in which this general rule is not complied with:—

<i>cēdo,</i>	<i>cessi,</i>	<i>cessum,</i>	move, yield.
<i>accendo,</i>	<i>accendi,</i>	<i>accensum,</i>	kindle. So also the other compounds of <i>cando</i> , which itself is not used.
<i>cūdo,</i>	<i>cūdi,</i>	<i>cūsum,</i>	forge, stamp.
<i>defendo,</i>	<i>defendi,</i>	<i>defensum,</i>	ward off, defend.
<i>ēdo,</i>	<i>ēdi,</i>	<i>ēsum,</i>	eat.
<i>fundo,</i>	<i>fūdi,</i>	<i>fūsum,</i>	pour.
<i>mando,</i>	(<i>mandi</i>),	<i>mansum,</i>	chew.
<i>prehendo,</i>	<i>prehendi,</i>	<i>prehensum,</i>	sometimes <i>prendi, prensum</i> , seize.
<i>scando,</i>	<i>scandi,</i>	<i>scansum,</i>	climb. Compare <i>accendo</i> above.
<i>strīdo,</i>	<i>strīdi,</i>	—	whistle, hiss. (Sometimes <i>strideo</i> , [<i>stridēre.</i>])
<i>rūdo,</i>	{ <i>rudīvi,</i> and	{ —	bray.
	<i>rudi,</i>		
<i>findo,</i>	<i>fīdi,</i>	<i>fissum,</i>	split.
<i>frendo,</i>	—	{ <i>fressum,</i> or	gnash.
		<i>fresum,</i>	
<i>pando,</i>	<i>pandi,</i>	{ <i>passum,</i> or	spread open. <i>Dispando</i> has only
		<i>pansum,</i>	<i>dispansum.</i>
<i>scindo,</i>	<i>scīdi,</i>	<i>scissum,</i>	cut.
<i>sīdo,</i>	<i>sēdi</i> (<i>sīdi</i>),	<i>sessum,</i>	seat myself.
<i>cīdo,</i>	<i>cēcīdi,</i>	<i>cāsum,</i>	fall. In compounds there is no reduplication, and the <i>d</i> is changed into <i>t</i> —as <i>concīdo, occīdo, recīdo.</i>
<i>caedo,</i>	<i>cecīdi,</i>	<i>caesum,</i>	cause to fall. In compounds there is no reduplication, and the <i>d</i> is changed into <i>t</i> —as <i>concīdo, concīsi, concisum.</i>
<i>pendo,</i>	<i>pēpendi,</i>	<i>pensum,</i>	weigh. Its compounds have no reduplication.

<i>tendo,</i>	<i>tētendi,</i>	{ <i>tensum,</i> or <i>tentum,</i>	stretch. Its compounds have no reduplication, and usually have <i>tentum</i> ; though some, as <i>extendo</i> and <i>retendo</i> , have both forms.
<i>tundo,</i>	<i>tūtūdi,</i>	{ <i>tūsum,</i> or <i>tunsum,</i>	beat. Its compounds generally have <i>tūsum</i> .
<i>crēdo,</i>	<i>crēdīdi,</i>	<i>crēdūtum,</i>	believe, intrust.

do in compounds following the third conjugation makes the perfect in *dīdi*, and supine *dītum*—as *addo*, *addīdi*, *addītum*; *condo*, *condīdi*, *condītum*. The double compound *abscondo* has usually *abscondi*, and rarely *abscondīdi*.

fido, *fisus sum,* trust (a semi-deponent.)

166. Verbs ending in *lo* never form the perfect and supine according to the general rule; some make them according to the second conjugation—perfect *ui*, supine *tum* or *ītum*—and others present other irregularities. The following are of this kind :—

<i>ālo,</i>	<i>ālui,</i>	{ <i>ālūm,</i> or <i>ālītum,</i>	nourish.
<i>cōlo,</i>	<i>cōlui,</i>	<i>cultum,</i>	cultivate, till.
<i>consūlo,</i>	<i>consului,</i>	<i>consultum,</i>	give advice, or ask for advice.
<i>occūlo,</i>	<i>occului,</i>	<i>occultum,</i>	conceal.
<i>mōlo,</i>	<i>molui,</i>	<i>molītum,</i>	grind.
<i>antecello,</i>	<i>antecellui,</i>	—	excel. From the obsolete <i>cello</i> : in like manner are conjugated <i>excello</i> and <i>præcello</i> .
<i>fallo,</i>	<i>fēfelli,</i>	<i>falsum,</i>	deceive.
<i>pello,</i>	<i>pēpūli,</i>	<i>pulsum,</i>	thrust. The compounds have no strike down. [reduplication.
<i>percello,</i>	<i>percūli,</i>	<i>perculsum,</i>	play a stringed instrument.
<i>psallo,</i>	<i>psalli,</i>	—	pull or pinch. The compounds have <i>velli</i> , <i>vulsum</i> ; but <i>avello</i> and <i>evello</i> have both <i>avelli</i> and <i>evelli</i> , and also <i>avulsi</i> and <i>evulsi</i> .
<i>vello,</i>	<i>velli (vulsi),</i>	<i>vulsum,</i>	
<i>tollo,</i>	<i>sustūli,</i>	<i>sublātum,</i>	lift up. Perfect and supine are here formed from a different stem, with the preposition <i>sub</i> .

167. Verbs ending in *mo* make their perfect regularly in *si*, and the supine in *tum*; but a euphonic *p* is generally inserted before these terminations—as *sumo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*; *comō*, *compsi*, *comptum*. The following, however, do not comply with this rule :—

<i>frēmo,</i>	<i>frēmui,</i>	<i>frēmītum,</i>	make a noise.
<i>gēmo,</i>	<i>gēmui,</i>	<i>gēmītum,</i>	groan.
<i>vōmo,</i>	<i>vōmui,</i>	<i>vōmītum,</i>	vomit.
<i>trēmo,</i>	<i>trēmui,</i>	—	tremble.

<i>ēmo,</i>	<i>ēmi,</i>	<i>emptum,</i>	buy. Its compounds, with the exception of <i>coēmo</i> , change <i>ē</i> into <i>i</i> —as <i>adēmo</i> , <i>adēmi</i> , <i>ademptum</i> . So also <i>esēmo</i> , <i>interēmo</i> , <i>perēmo</i> , <i>redēmo</i> .
<i>premo,</i>	<i>pressi,</i>	<i>pressum,</i>	press.

168. Verbs ending in *no* deviate from the general rule for the formation of the perfect and supine, with the exception of *temno* and its compounds, which make the perfect *tempsi*, and the supine *temptum*—as *contemno*, *contempsi*, *contemptum*. The following are peculiar :—

<i>cano,</i>	<i>cēcīni,</i>	<i>cantum,</i>	sing. Among its compounds, <i>concīno</i> and <i>occīno</i> (also <i>occēno</i>) make their perfect <i>concīnui</i> and <i>occīnui</i> , and the supine <i>concentum</i> and <i>occentum</i> .
<i>gigno,</i>	<i>gēnui,</i>	<i>gēnitum,</i>	beget.
<i>pōno,</i>	<i>pōsui,</i>	<i>pōsitum,</i>	place.
<i>linō,</i>	{ <i>lēvi,</i> <i>livi,</i> }	<i>litum,</i>	anoint, daub. Another form is <i>linio</i> , <i>linire</i> .
<i>sino,</i>	<i>sivi,</i>	<i>situm,</i>	allow, permit. <i>Desino</i> , perf. <i>desivi</i> , admits of contraction— <i>desii</i> , <i>desisti</i> , <i>desiit</i> , <i>desieram</i> , &c.
<i>cerno,</i>	<i>crēvi,</i>	(<i>crētum</i>),	separate, perceive.
<i>sperno,</i>	<i>sprēvi,</i>	<i>sprētum,</i>	despise.
<i>sterno,</i>	<i>strāvi,</i>	<i>strātum,</i>	throw down.

169. Verbs in *ro* generally form the perfect and supine irregularly, but *r* being changed into *s* cannot be regarded as an irregularity, *s* and *r* being convertible, as—

<i>gēro,</i>	<i>gessi,</i>	<i>gestum,</i>	carry.
<i>ūro,</i>	<i>ussi,</i>	<i>ustum,</i>	burn.
<i>curro,</i>	<i>cūcurri,</i>	<i>cursum,</i>	run, race.

170. Verbs in *so* (*xo*) usually form their perfect in *ui*, like those of the second conjugation ; but in the supine they generally drop the connecting vowel *i* before *tum*, as—

<i>viso,</i>	<i>vīsi,</i>	—	visit.
<i>depeo,</i>	<i>depsui,</i>	<i>depētum,</i>	knead.
<i>pinso,</i>	{ <i>pīnsui,</i> or <i>pīnsi,</i> }	{ <i>pīnsitum,</i> <i>pīnsūm,</i> <i>pīstūm,</i> }	pound.
<i>texo,</i>	<i>texui,</i>	<i>textum,</i>	weave.

171. Those in *esso* make their perfect in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*, as verbs of the fourth conjugation :—

<i>arcesso,</i>	<i>arcessīvi,</i>	<i>arcessitum,</i>	{ send for. The passive infinitive is sometimes <i>arcessiri</i> .
<i>accerso,</i>	<i>accerīvi,</i>	<i>acceritum,</i>	

<i>capesso,</i>	<i>capessivi,</i>	<i>capessitum,</i>	strive to obtain.
<i>facesso,</i>	<i>facessivi,</i>	<i>facessitum,</i>	cause.
<i>laccio,</i>	<i>laccssivi,</i>	<i>laccssitum,</i>	provoke.
<i>incesso,</i>	<i>incessivi,</i>	—	attack.

172. In many verbs ending in *cto* the *t* is only an increase of the stem in the present, and is accordingly omitted in the perfect and supine, the original stem ending in *c*—as *flecto*, *flevi*, *flexum*; but the following are not reducible to any rule:—

<i>mĕto,</i>	<i>messui,</i>	<i>messum,</i>	reap.
<i>mitto,</i>	<i>missi,</i>	<i>missum,</i>	send.
<i>pĕto,</i>	{ <i>pĕtĭvi,</i> or <i>pĕtĭi,</i>	<i>pĕtitum,</i>	seek, aim at.
<i>sisto,</i>	<i>stĭti,</i>	<i>stĭtum,</i>	cause to stand. In its intransitive meaning, 'I stand,' its perfect is <i>stĕti</i> (from <i>sto</i> , <i>stare</i>), and the supine <i>stĭtum</i> .
<i>sterto,</i>	<i>stertui,</i>	—	snore.
<i>verto,</i>	<i>verti,</i>	<i>versum,</i>	turn.

173. In verbs ending in *sco*, the *sco* either belongs to the stem, and is consequently retained in conjugation, or *sco* is a suffix, by means of which verbs are derived from verbs, substantives, and adjectives. This class of derivative verbs is called *inchoative*, and denotes an action or condition as beginning to take place. There are few verbs in which the *sc* belongs to the stem:—

<i>disco,</i>	<i>didici,</i>	—	learn.
<i>posco,</i>	<i>pōposci,</i>	—	demand.
<i>glisco,</i>	—	—	increase.

174. Inchoative verbs take the perfect of the simple verbs from which they are formed—as *incalesco*, perf. *incalui* (from *caleo*); *ingemisco*, *ingemui* (from *gemo*); *deliquesco*, *delicui* (from *liqueo*, perf. *liqui* or *licui*.)

Few inchoative verbs have the supine of the verbs from which they are derived. Some, which are derived from adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*, or *er*, *a*, *um*, form a perfect in *ui*, but have no supine—as *maturesco* (grow ripe), perf. *maturui*; *obmutesco* (grow dumb), *obmutui*; *percrebro* (become frequent), *percrebrui*; and so also *evilesco*, *evilui*, though it is derived from the adjective *vilis*. *Irrauesco* (grow hoarse, from *raucus*) makes the perfect irregularly *irrausi*. All others derived from adjectives in *is*, and many of those derived from adjectives in *us*, have neither perfect nor supine.

175. The following inchoatives have also the supine of their simple verbs:—

<i>coalesco,</i>	<i>coalui,</i>	<i>coalitum,</i>	grow together (from <i>alo</i> .)
<i>concupisco,</i>	<i>concupivi,</i>	<i>concupitum,</i>	desire strongly (from <i>cupio</i> .)

<i>convalesco,</i>	<i>convalui,</i>	<i>convallium,</i>	grow well, strong (from <i>valeo</i> .)
<i>exardesco,</i>	<i>exarsi,</i>	<i>exarsum,</i>	begin to blaze (from <i>ardeo</i> .)
<i>inveterasco,</i>	<i>inveteravi,</i>	<i>inveteratum,</i>	grow old (from <i>invetero</i> .)
<i>obdormisco,</i>	<i>obdormivi,</i>	<i>obdormiŭm,</i>	fall asleep (from <i>dormio</i> .)
<i>revivisco,</i>	<i>revixi,</i>	<i>revictum,</i>	revive (from <i>vivo</i> .)

176. The following verbs, though originally inchoatives, have lost their inchoative meaning, or are derived from simple verbs which are no longer in use, and may therefore be regarded as simple verbs :—

<i>adolesco,</i>	<i>adolēvi,</i>	<i>adultum,</i>	grow up, }	from the obsolete [<i>oleo</i> , grow.]
<i>exolesco,</i>	<i>exolēvi,</i>	<i>exolētum,</i>	disappear, }	
<i>cresco,</i>	<i>crēvi,</i>	<i>crētum,</i>	grow.	
<i>compesco,</i>	<i>compescui,</i>	_____	tame, subdue.	
<i>dispesco,</i>	<i>dispescui,</i>	_____	sever, separate.	
<i>hisco,</i>	_____	_____	yawn.	
<i>nosco,</i>	<i>nōvi,</i>	<i>nōtum,</i>	become acquainted. Its com- pounds make the supine in <i>itum</i> — as <i>agnosco</i> , <i>agnitum</i> ; <i>cognosco</i> , <i>cognitum</i> ; but <i>igno-</i> <i>nosco</i> (pardon) has <i>ignōtum</i> .	
<i>pasco,</i>	<i>pāvi,</i>	<i>pastum,</i>	feed.	
<i>quiesco,</i>	<i>quievi,</i>	<i>quietum,</i>	rest.	
<i>suesco,</i>	<i>suēvi,</i>	<i>suētum,</i>	accustom myself.	
<i>scisco,</i>	<i>scivi,</i>	<i>scitum,</i>	ordain, sanction (from <i>scio</i> .)	

177. The following deponent verbs also form their supine, or rather their perfect participle, peculiarly :—

<i>fruor,</i>	{ <i>fruitus</i> , and <i>fructus sum</i> , }	enjoy (part. fut. <i>fruiturus</i> .)
<i>grādior,</i>	<i>gressus sum,</i>	proceed.
<i>aggrēdior,</i>	<i>aggressus sum,</i>	attack.
<i>liq̄uor,</i>	_____	melt.
<i>lōquor,</i>	<i>lōcutus sum,</i>	speak.
<i>sēquor,</i>	<i>sēcutus sum,</i>	follow.
<i>mōrior,</i>	<i>mortuus sum,</i>	die (part. fut. <i>moriturus</i> .)
<i>nītor,</i>	{ <i>nixus</i> , or <i>nīsus sum</i> , }	lean upon, strive.
<i>pātor,</i>	<i>passus sum,</i>	suffer.
<i>amplector,</i> and }	<i>amplexus</i> , and }	embrace (from <i>plecto</i> .)
<i>complector,</i>	<i>complexus sum,</i>	complain.
<i>quēror,</i>	<i>questus sum,</i>	gnash the teeth.
<i>ringor,</i>	_____	use.
<i>ūtor,</i>	<i>ūsus sum,</i>	obtain ; <i>adipiscor</i> , <i>adeptus sum</i> ,
<i>āpiscor,</i>	<i>aptus sum,</i>	grow weary. [is more common.
<i>defetiscor,</i>	<i>defessus sum,</i>	awake.
<i>expergiscor,</i>	<i>experrectus sum,</i>	am angry.
<i>irascor,</i>	<i>irātus sum,</i>	devise.
<i>comminiscor,</i>	<i>commentus sum,</i>	remember.
<i>reminiscor,</i>	_____	
<i>nanciscor,</i>	{ <i>nactus</i> , or <i>nactus sum</i> , }	obtain.

<i>nascor,</i>	<i>nātus sum,</i>	am born (part. fut. <i>nascitūrus</i> .)
<i>obliviscor,</i>	<i>oblītus sum,</i>	forget.
<i>paciscor,</i>	<i>pactus sum,</i>	make a treaty.
<i>proficiscor,</i>	<i>profectus sum,</i>	depart, travel.
<i>ulciscor,</i>	<i>ultus sum,</i>	avenge.
<i>vescor,</i>	—	feed on.
<i>revertor,</i>	<i>reversus sum,</i>	return.
<i>divertor,</i>	—	turn aside.

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION FORMING THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE DIFFERENTLY FROM THE GENERAL RULE.

178. Verbs of the fourth conjugation make their perfect by adding to the stem *vi* for the perfect, and *tum* for the supine; but the following make the perfect in *si*, and the supine in *tum*, before which the *i* of the stem is often omitted:—

<i>farcio,</i>	<i>farsi,</i>	{ <i>fartum,</i> or <i>farctum,</i>	stuff. In compounds the <i>a</i> is changed into <i>e</i> —as <i>refercio</i> , <i>referſi</i> , <i>referſum</i> .
<i>fulcio,</i>	<i>fulsi,</i>	<i>fultum,</i>	prop.
<i>haurio,</i>	<i>hausi,</i>	<i>haustum,</i>	draw (part. fut. <i>hausturus</i> , or <i>hausu-</i> [rus.]
<i>sancio,</i>	<i>sanxi,</i>	{ <i>sancitum,</i> or <i>sancitum,</i>	decree.
<i>sarcio,</i>	<i>sarsi,</i>	<i>sartum,</i>	patch.
<i>sentio,</i>	<i>sensi,</i>	<i>sensum,</i>	feel.
<i>saepio,</i>	<i>saepsi,</i>	<i>saepitum,</i>	hedge in; is also spelled <i>sepio</i> .
<i>vincio,</i>	<i>vinxi,</i>	<i>vinctum,</i>	bind.

179. The following present various irregularities:—

<i>amicio,</i>	<i>amicivi,</i>	<i>amictum,</i>	clothe.
<i>cio,</i>	<i>civi,</i>	<i>clitum,</i>	summon, call.
<i>eo,</i>	<i>ivi,</i>	<i>itum,</i>	go.
<i>ferio,</i>	—	—	strike.
<i>aperio,</i>	<i>aperui,</i>	<i>apertum,</i>	open.
<i>reperio,</i>	<i>reperi,</i>	<i>reperitum,</i>	find; the perfect is better spelled <i>repperi</i> . So also <i>comperio</i> , <i>comperi</i> , <i>comperitum</i> .
<i>salio,</i>	{ <i>salui,</i> or <i>salii,</i>	<i>saltum,</i>	leap. In compounds the <i>a</i> is changed into <i>i</i> —as <i>desilio</i> , <i>desilui</i> , or <i>desilii</i> , <i>desultum</i> .
<i>sepelio,</i>	<i>sepelivi,</i>	<i>sepultum,</i>	bury. There is also a perfect <i>sepeli</i> .
<i>venio,</i>	<i>veni,</i>	<i>ventum,</i>	come.

180. *Desiderative* verbs end in *urio*, and are derivatives denoting a desire to do that which is implied in the simple verb; they have neither perfect nor supine—as *dormiturio*, wish to sleep, or am sleepy; *esurio*, want to eat. The same is the case with some derivatives from adjectives—as *caecutio* (from *caecus*), am blind; *ineptio* (from *ineptus*), am silly.

181. There are also some deponents of the fourth conjugation which form the past participle differently from the general rule:—

<i>assentior,</i>	<i>assensus sum,</i>	assent.
<i>experior,</i>	<i>expertus sum,</i>	experience.
<i>mélior,</i>	<i>mensus sum,</i>	measure.
<i>oppërior,</i>	<i>{ oppertus, or opperitus sum, }</i>	wait for.
<i>ordior,</i>	<i>orsus sum,</i>	begin.
<i>orior,</i>	<i>ortus sum,</i>	rise (fut. part. <i>oriturus</i> , and gerundive <i>oriundus</i> .)

In the present indicative, *orior* is inflected according to the third conjugation—as *orëris*, *oritur*, *orimur*; in the imperfect subjunctive we find both *orërer* and *orirer*. The same is the case with the compounds *coörior* and *exorior*; but *adorior* follows the fourth conjugation in every respect.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

182. Irregular verbs are those which not only form their perfect and supine in an unusual manner, but also differ from the ordinary forms in the manner in which the terminations are added to the stem. Most of these irregularities, however, arise from euphonic changes, syncope, contraction, and from the fact, that different tenses of one verb are formed from different stems, as in the case of the verb *esse*.

183. The number of simple irregular verbs is eleven—*sum*, *possum*, *edo*, *fero*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *eo*, *queo*, *nequeo*, and *fio*, to which their derivatives and compounds must be added: these, however, are conjugated like the simple verbs.

184. The verb *possum* (I am able, or I can) is a compound of *pot* (from *potis*, *pote*, able) and *sum*, the *t* before *s* being assimilated to *s*, but reappearing wherever *sum* begins with a vowel; in the perfect, and the tenses derived from it, the *f* (of *fuo*) is thrown out.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *pos-sum*, I am able, I can.

Sing. *pos-sim*, I am able, or
may be able.

pöt-ës.

pos-sis.

pöt-est.

pos-sit.

Plur. *pos-sūmus.*

Plur. *pos-sīmus.*

pöt-estis.

pos-sitis.

pos-sunt.

pos-sint.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. <i>pōt-eram</i> , I was able, or I could. <i>pōt-ērās.</i> <i>pōt-ērat.</i>	Sing. <i>pos-sem</i> , I was, might, or should be, able. <i>pos-sēs.</i> <i>pos-sēt.</i>
Plur. <i>pōt-ērāmus.</i> <i>pōt-ērātis.</i> <i>pōt-ērant.</i>	Plur. <i>pos-sēmus.</i> <i>pos-sētis.</i> <i>pos-sent.</i>

FUTURE.

Sing. <i>pōt-ēro</i> , I shall be able. <i>pot-ēris.</i> <i>pot-ērit.</i>	The subjunctive is wanting.
Plur. <i>pot-ērīmus.</i> <i>pot-ērītis.</i> <i>pot-ērunt.</i>	

PERFECT.

Sing. <i>pōt-ui</i> , I was, have been, able. <i>pot-uistī.</i> <i>pot-uit.</i>	Sing. <i>pōt-uērim</i> , I may have been able. <i>pot-uēris.</i> <i>pot-uērit.</i>
Plur. <i>pot-uīmus.</i> <i>pot-uistis.</i> <i>pot-uērunt</i> , or <i>ēre.</i>	Plur. <i>pot-uērīmus.</i> <i>pot-uērītis.</i> <i>pot-uērint.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. <i>pōt-uēram</i> , I had been able. <i>pot-uērās.</i> <i>pot-uērat.</i>	Sing. <i>pōt-uissem</i> , I had, should, or might have been able. <i>pot-uissēs.</i> <i>pot-uissēt.</i>
Plur. <i>pot-uērāmus.</i> <i>pot-uērātis.</i> <i>pot-uērant.</i>	Plur. <i>pot-uissēmus.</i> <i>pot-uissētis.</i> <i>pot-uissent.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. <i>pōt-uēro</i> , I shall have been able. <i>pot-uēris.</i> <i>pot-uērit.</i>	The subjunctive is wanting.
Plur. <i>pot-uērīmus.</i> <i>pot-uērītis.</i> <i>pot-uērint.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Present, *pos-se*, to be able.Perfect, *pot-uisse*, to have been able.

PARTICIPLE.

Potens, is used only as an adjective = 'powerful.'

The imperative does not occur.

185. The verb *ēdo* (I eat) may be conjugated regularly after the third conjugation, perf. *ēdī*, sup. *ēsum*, inf. *ēdere*; but in several of its forms a syncope is sometimes employed, in consequence of which they become like the corresponding tenses of the verb *sum*. The following are the tenses in which this resemblance occurs:—

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *edo*, *edis* or *ēs*, *edit* or *ēst*.Plur. *edimus*, *editis* or *ēstis*,
edunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *ederem* or *ēssem*, *ederes* or
ēsset, *ederet* or *ēsset*.Plur. *ederemus* or *ēssemus*,
ederetis or *ēssetis*,
ederent or *ēsset*.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *ede* or *ēs*.Plur. *edite* or *ēste*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *edito* or *ēsto*.Plur. *edito* or *ēsto*, *editote* or
ēstote.

INFINITIVE.

ēdere or *ēsse*.

In the passive, the syncope takes place only in *editur*, *estur*, and *ederetur*, *ēssetur*.

The same syncope occurs in the compounds of *edo*—as *comedo*, *comedis* = *comēs*, *comedit* = *comēs*, *comedere* = *comēsse*, and so on. The *e* in all these syncopated forms was pronounced as long by nature, and not only by position.

186. The irregularity of the verb *fēro* (I bring or bear), which properly belongs to the third conjugation, consists in its taking its perfect *tūli* and its supine *lātum* from different words. The tenses derived from these two forms, however, are perfectly regular; but in the other tenses an occasional irregularity occurs, which arises from the omission of the connecting vowel between the stem and the termination:—

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. <i>fēr-o, fer-s, fer-t.</i>	Sing. <i>fēr-am, fēr-as, fēr-at.</i>
Plur. <i>fēr-ī-mus, fer-tis, fēr-u-nt.</i>	Plur. <i>fēr-ā-mus, fēr-ātis, fēr-ant.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Sing. <i>fer-ē-bam, fer-ē-bas, fer-ē-bat.</i>	Sing. <i>fer-rem, fer-res, fer-ret.</i>
Plur. <i>fer-ē-bamus, fer-ē-batis, fer-ē-bant.</i>	Plur. <i>fer-remus, fer-retis, fer-rent.</i>

FUTURE.

Sing. <i>fēr-am, fēr-ēs, fēr-et.</i>	Sing. <i>la-turus (a, um) sim, sis, sit.</i>
Plur. <i>fēr-ē-mus, fēr-ētis, fēr-ent.</i>	Plur. <i>la-turi (ae, a) simus, sitis, sint.</i>

PERFECT.

Sing. <i>tāl-i, tāl-isti, tāl-it.</i>	Sing. <i>tāl-ērim, tāl-ēris, tāl-ērit.</i>
Plur. <i>tāl-imus, tāl-istis, tāl-ērunt, or ēre.</i>	Plur. <i>tāl-ērīmus, tāl-ērītis, tāl-ērīnt.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. <i>tāl-eram, ēras, erat.</i>	Sing. <i>tāl-issem, isses, isset.</i>
Plur. <i>tāl-erāmus, ērātis, erant.</i>	Plur. <i>tāl-issemus, issetis, issent.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. <i>tāl-ēro, ēris, ērit.</i>	The subjunctive is wanting.
Plur. <i>tāl-ērīmus, ērītis, ērint.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sing. <i>fer.</i>	Sing. <i>fer-to.</i>
	<i>fer-to.</i>
Plur. <i>fer-te.</i>	Plur. <i>fer-tote.</i>
	<i>fer-u-nto.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present, *fer-re.*
 Perfect, *tāl-isse.*
 Future, *lā-tūrum (am, um) esse.*

GERUND.

fer-endum, fer-endi, fer-endo.

SUPINE.

lā-tum and lā-tū.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *fēr-e-ns*.Future, *lā-tūrus, a, um*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *fēr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur*.Plur. *fēr-i-mur, fēr-i-mini,
fēr-u-ntur*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. *fēr-ar, aris, ātur*.Plur. *fēr-āmur, āmini, antur*.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *fēr-ē-bar, bāris (or bāre),
bātur*.Plur. *fēr-ē-bāmur, bāmini,
bantur*.Sing. *fer-rer, fer-rēris (or
rēre), fer-rētur*.Plur. *fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini,
fer-rentur*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *fēr-ar, eris, ētur*.Plur. *fēr-ēmur, ēmini, entur*.

The subjunctive is wanting.

PERFECT.

Sing. *lā-tus (a, um) sum, es,
est*.Plur. *lā-ti (ae, a) sumus, estis,
sunt*.Sing. *lā-tus (a, um) sim, sis,
sit*.Plur. *lā-ti (ae, a) simus, sitis,
sint*.

PLUPERFECT.

Sing. *lā-tus (a, um) eram, eras,
erat*.Plur. *lā-ti (ae, a) eramus,
eratis, erant*.Sing. *lā-tus (a, um) essem,
&c.*Plur. *lā-ti (ae, a) essemus, &c.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing. *lā-tus (a, um) ero, &c.*Plur. *lā-ti (ae, a) erimus, &c.*

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *fer-re*.Plur. *fēr-ēmini*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *fer-tor*.*fer-tor*.Plur. *fer-u-ntur*.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *fer-ri*.Perfect, *lā-tum (am, um) esse*.Future, *lā-tum iri*.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *lā-tus, a, um.*Gerundive, *fer-e-ndus, a, um.*

All the compounds of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb—as *affero* (from *ad* and *fero*), *attuli, allatum*; *aufero* (from *ab* and *fero*), *abstuli, ablatum, auferre*; *offero* (from *ob* and *fero*), *obtuli, oblatum*; *suffero* (from *sub* and *fero*), *sustuli, sublatum* (used as the perfect and supine of the verb *tollo*); *differo* (from *dis* and *fero*), *distuli, dilatum*; *defero, detuli, delatum*; *circumfero, circumtuli, circumlatum*; *transfero, transtuli, translatum*.

187. *Vōlo* (I will) is a simple verb, but *nōlo* (I will not) is compounded of *ne* or *non*, and *volo*; and *mālo* (I will rather) of *magis* or *mage*, and *volo*. They are irregular only in the tenses formed from the present indicative and the infinitive.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. <i>vōl-o,</i>	<i>nōl-o,</i>	<i>māl-o.</i>
<i>vīs,</i>	<i>non vīs,</i>	<i>māvīs.</i>
<i>vul-t,</i>	<i>non vul-t,</i>	<i>māvul-t.</i>
Plur. <i>vōl-ū-mus,</i>	<i>nōl-ū-mus,</i>	<i>māl-ū-mus.</i>
<i>vul-tis,</i>	<i>non vul-tis,</i>	<i>māvul-tis.</i>
<i>vōl-u-nt,</i>	<i>nōl-u-nt,</i>	<i>māl-u-nt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

vōl-ē-bam, bas, &c. *nōl-ē-bam, bas, &c.* *māl-ē-bam, bas, &c.*

FUTURE.

vōl-am, es, et, &c. *nōl-am, es, et, &c.* *māl-am, es, &c.*

PERFECT.

vōl-ui, uisti, &c. *nōl-ui, uisti, &c.* *māl-ui, uisti, &c.*

PLUPERFECT.

vōl-uēram, uēras, &c. *nōl-uēram, uēras, &c.* *māl-uēram, uēras.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

vōl-uēro, uēris, &c. *nōl-uēro, uēris, &c.* *māl-uēro, uēris.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. <i>vēl-i-m,</i>	<i>nōl-i-m,</i>	<i>māl-i-m.</i>
<i>vēl-i-s,</i>	<i>nōl-i-s,</i>	<i>māl-i-s.</i>
<i>vēl-i-t,</i>	<i>nōl-i-t,</i>	<i>māl-i-t.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Plur. <i>vĕl-i-mus,</i>	<i>nōl-i-mus,</i>	<i>māl-i-mus.</i>
<i>vĕl-i-tis,</i>	<i>nōl-i-tis,</i>	<i>māl-i-tis.</i>
<i>vĕl-i-nt,</i>	<i>nōl-i-nt,</i>	<i>māl-i-nt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>vel-lem, es, et, &c.</i>	<i>nol-lem, es, et, &c.</i>	<i>mal-lem, es, et, &c.</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------

PERFECT.

<i>vōl-uĕrim, ueris,</i> <i>&c.</i>	<i>nōl-uĕrim, uĕris,</i> <i>&c.</i>	<i>māl-uĕrim, uĕris,</i> <i>&c.</i>
--	--	--

PLUPERFECT.

<i>vōl-uissem, uisses,</i> <i>&c.</i>	<i>nōl-uissem, uisses,</i> <i>&c.</i>	<i>māl-uissem, uisses,</i> <i>&c.</i>
--	--	--

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

_____	<i>nōl-i, nōl-itĕ.</i>	_____
-------	------------------------	-------

FUTURE.

_____	Sing. <i>nōl-i-to.</i>		Plur. <i>nōl-i-tōte.</i>	_____
	<i>nōl-i-to.</i>		<i>nōl-u-nto.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Present, <i>vel-lĕ,</i>	<i>nol-lĕ,</i>	<i>mal-lĕ.</i>
Perfect, <i>vōl-uisse,</i>	<i>nōl-uisse,</i>	<i>māl-uisse.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present, <i>vōl-e-ns,</i>	<i>nōl-e-ns.</i>	_____
---------------------------	------------------	-------

188. The verb *eo* (I go) belongs to the fourth conjugation, and is almost regular. Its stem consists of a simple *i*, which before *a*, *o*, and *u* is changed into *e*; the imperfect indicative is formed without the connecting vowel *e*; and the future ends in *bo* instead of *am*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. <i>e-o, i-s, i-t.</i>		Sing. <i>e-am, e-ās, e-at.</i>
Plur. <i>i-mus, i-tis, e-unt.</i>		Plur. <i>e-āmus, e-ātis, e-ant.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Sing. <i>i-bam, i-bas, i-bat, &c.</i>		Sing. <i>i-rem, i-res, i-ret, &c.</i>
---	--	---

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *ī-bo, ī-bis, ī-bit, &c.*

FUTURE.

Sing. *ī-tūrus (a, um), sim, sis, &c.*

PERFECT.

*ī-vī, ī-visti, ī-vit, &c.**ī-verim, ī-vēris, ī-vērit, &c.*

PLUPERFECT.

*ī-vēram, ī-vēras, ī-vērat, &c.**ī-vissem, ī-visses, ī-visset, &c.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ī-vēro, ī-vēris, ī-vērit, &c.

The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *ī.*Plur. *ī-te.*

FUTURE.

Sing. *ī-to.**ī-to.*Plur. *ī-tote.**e-unto.*

INFINITIVE.

Present, *ī-re.*Perfect, *ī-visse.*Future, *ī-tūrum (am, um) esse.*

GERUND.

e-u-ndum, e-u-ndi, e-u-ndo.

SUPINE.

ī-tum, ī-tu.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *i-e-ns* ; gen. *e-u-ntis.*Future, *ī-tūrus, a, um.*

In like manner are conjugated all the compounds of *eo* ; but in the perfect *ivi, ivisti, &c.* the endings are generally contracted into *ū, iisti*, or *isti*—as *abeo*, perf. *abiū, abiisti*, or *abisti* ; *redeo*, perf. *redii, rediisti*, or *redisti*, *redieram, rediissem*, or *redissem, &c.*

Among the compounds of *eo* two deserve special notice—*vēneo* (I am sold), *ambio* (I go round.) The former, which has a passive meaning, is composed of *venum* and *eo*, and takes the place of the passive of *vendo* (*venum do*), I sell.

Ambio is conjugated regularly according to the fourth conjugation—as *ambiunt*, *ambiam*, *ambiebam* (also *ambibam*), *ambient* (also *ambibunt*), *ambiendum*, *ambiens*, genitive *ambientis*.

189. The verbs *queo* (I can) and *nequeo* (I cannot) are both conjugated like *eo*—perfect *quīvi* and *nequīvi*, supine *quītum* and *nequītum*, infinitive *quīre* and *nequīre*; but neither of them has an imperative, a gerund, or a future participle.

190. *Fio* (I become, or am made) is a verb of the fourth conjugation, and presents few irregularities, except that its compound tenses are taken from *facio*, to which it supplies the place of a passive. Its stem is *fī*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *fī-o*, *fī-s*, *fī-t*.Plur. *fī-mus*, *fī-tis*, *fī-unt*.Sing. *fī-am*, *fī-ās*, *fī-at*.Plur. *fī-āmus*, *fī-ātis*, *fī-ant*.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. *fī-ē-bam*, *fī-ē-bās*, *fī-ē-bat*.Plur. *fī-ē-bāmus*, *fī-ē-bātis*, *fī-ē-bant*.Sing. *fī-ē-rem*, *fī-e-res*, *fī-e-ret*.Plur. *fī-ē-rēmus*, *fī-ē-rētis*, *fī-ē-rent*.

FUTURE.

Sing. *fī-am*, *fī-ēs*, *fī-et*.Plur. *fī-ēmus*, *fī-ētis*, *fī-ent*.

The subjunctive is wanting.

PERFECT.

fac-tus (*a*, *um*) *sum*, *es*, &c.| *fac-tus* (*a*, *um*) *sim*, *sis*, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

fac-tus (*a*, *um*) *eram*, *eras*, &c.| *fac-tus* (*a*, *um*) *essem*, *esses*, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

fac-tus (*a*, *um*) *ero*, *eris*, &c.

| The subjunctive is wanting.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Sing. *fī*.Plur. *fī-te*.

The future is wanting.

INFINITIVE.

Present, *fi-eri*.

Perfect, *fac-tum (am, um) esse*.

Future, *fac-tum iri*.

PARTICIPLES.

Present is wanting.

Perfect, *fac-tus, a, um*.

Gerundive, *fac-i-e-ndus*.

The *i* in *fio* is long throughout, even when followed by another vowel; but it is short in *fui*, and wherever it is followed by *-er*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

191. Defective verbs are those of which only certain isolated forms occur in Latin authors. Such verbs are *coepti*, *mēmīni*, *ōdī*, *nōvī*, *aio*, *inquam*, *fārī*, *cēdo*, *quaeso*; and the imperatives, *āvē*, *āpāgē*, *salvē*, *vālē*, and *ōvāre*.

192. The four verbs *coepti* (I begin), *mēmīni* (I remember), *ōdī* (I hate), *nōvī* (I know), are in reality perfects, the presents of which are not in use, with the exception of *nōvī*, which is derived from *nosco* (I become acquainted.) These perfects have the meaning of a present; for *nōvī*, 'I have become acquainted,' is equivalent to 'I know;' hence the pluperfect has the meaning of an ordinary imperfect, and the future perfect that of an ordinary future. They have of course only those tenses which are derived from the perfect; and their conjugation is quite regular.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

<i>coepti</i> ,	<i>mēmīn-ī</i> ,	<i>ōd-ī</i> ,	<i>nōv-ī</i> .
<i>coep-istī</i> ,	<i>mēmīn-istī</i> ,	<i>ōd-istī</i> ,	<i>nōv-istī</i> .
<i>coep-it</i> , &c.	<i>mēmīn-it</i> , &c.	<i>ōd-it</i> , &c.	<i>nōv-it</i> , &c.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>coep-eram</i> ,	<i>mēmīn-eram</i> ,	<i>ōd-eram</i> ,	<i>nōv-eram</i> .
--------------------	---------------------	------------------	-------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>coep-ero</i> ,	<i>mēmīn-ero</i> ,	<i>ōd-ero</i> ,	<i>nōv-ero</i> .
-------------------	--------------------	-----------------	------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

<i>coep-erim</i> ,	<i>mēmīn-erim</i> ,	<i>ōd-erim</i> ,	<i>nōv-erim</i> .
--------------------	---------------------	------------------	-------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

coep-issem, mēmīn-issem, ōd-issem, nōv-issem.

IMPERATIVE.

FUTURE.

_____	Sing. <i>mēmēn-to.</i>		_____	_____
	Plur. <i>mēmēn-tōte.</i>			

INFINITIVE.

coep-isse, mēmīn-isse, ōd-isse, nōv-isse.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.

coep-tus, _____ ō-sus (obsolete), (nō-tus.)

FUTURE.

coep-tūrus, _____ ō-sūrus. _____

Coepi has also a passive *coeptus* (*a, um*) *sum*, which is used in connection with other passive verbs—*domus aedificari coepta est* (the building of the house was commenced.) Hence we have the forms *coeptus sum, coeptus eram, coeptus ero, coeptus essem, coeptum (am, um) esse*, and so on.

193. Of *aio* (I say, say yes, or affirm), only the following forms occur :—

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. <i>aio, ais, ait.</i>		Sing. — <i>aias, aiat.</i>
Plur. — — <i>aiunt.</i>		Plur. — — <i>aiant.</i>

IMPERFECT.

PARTICIPLE.

Sing. *aiebam, aiebas, aiebat, &c.* | Present, *aiens*, affirming.

The imperative *ai* is obsolete, and the perfect *aii* is like the present.

194. *Inquam* (I say) is very defective; the following forms only occur :—

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

IMPERFECT.

Sing. <i>inquam, inquis, inquit.</i>		Sing. — — <i>inquirebat.</i>
Plur. <i>inquimus, inquitis, in-</i> <i>quiunt.</i>		Plur. — — —

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

Sing. — *inquisti, inquit.*

FUTURE.

Sing. — *inquiēs, inquiet.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. *inque.*

FUTURE.

Sing. *inquirto.*

Inquam is, like *ait*, used only between the words of a quotation—as *tum ille, nego, inquit, verum esse*, ‘I deny, he then said, that it is true.’

195. The verb *fārī* (to speak), a deponent of the first conjugation, is defective; there are, however, some of its compounds—as *affari, effari, praefari*, and *profari*—which have a few more forms, distinguished from the others by being placed within parentheses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. — — *fātur.*Plur. (*famur, famini*) — | The subjunctive is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

(*fabar.*)| (*farer, &c.*)

FUTURE.

fābor (faberis), fābitur. | The subjunctive is wanting.

PERFECT.

fātus (a, um) sum, &c. | *fātus (a, um) sim, &c.*

PLUPERFECT.

fātus (a, um) eram, &c. | *fātus (a, um) essem, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. *fāre.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *fārī.*

SUPINE.

fātu.

PARTICIPLES.

Present,

fantis, fanti, fantem, fante.

Perfect,

fātus, a, um.

Gerundive,

fandus, a, um.

196. *Cēdo* is used only as an imperative in the sense of ‘give’ or ‘tell’—as *cedo librum*, ‘give up the book;’ *cedo quid faciam*, ‘tell me what I am to do.’

197. *Quaeso* (I pray) and *quaesumus* (we pray) are only different in form from *quaero* and *quaerimus*. Both *quaeso* and

quaesumus are, like the English 'pray,' inserted in a sentence—as *dic, quaeso, unde venias*, 'tell me, pray, whence you come.'

198. The four imperatives *āvē*, *āpāgē*, *salvē*, *vālē*, are derived from the verbs *aveo* (I am inclined, desire), the Greek *ἀπάγω* (Lat. *abigo*), *salveo* (I am safe), and *valeo* (I am well or strong.)

āvē (or *have*), plural *avēte*, and the future imperative *avēto* (sometimes *avēre jubeo*), signify 'be greeted,' or 'good-day,' 'I am glad to see you.'

āpāgē was used by the Romans in the sense of 'begone,' or 'be off.' Sometimes the pronoun *te* is added.

salvē, plural *salvēte*, and future *salvēto*, are used in the sense of 'hail!' or 'be welcome.'

vālē or *vālēte* signify 'farewell.'

199. Of *ōvāre* (to rejoice, or celebrate a triumph), there occur only *ōvet*, *ōvāret*, *ōvandi*, *ōvāturus*, *ōvātus*, *ōvandi*, and frequently *ovans*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

200. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and can have neither a substantive nor a substantive pronoun for their subject. They state only in a general way that something happens, and their subject in English is the indefinite 'it'—as *pluit*, it rains; *licet*, it is permitted; *oportet*, it is a duty.

201. Impersonal verbs are those which denote the various states of the weather, as—

pluit, it rains.

ningit, it snows.

grandinat, it hails.

lapidat, or *lapidatum est*, stones fall from heaven.

lucescit and *illucescit*, it dawns.

fulgurat and *fulminat*, it lightens.

tōnat, it thunders.

vesperascit and *advesperascit*, it grows dark.

202. The following impersonal verbs describe certain states of the mind, and require the person in whom the state of mind exists in the accusative:—

miseret (me), I pity, perf. *miseritum est*, *misertum est*, or *miseruit*.

piget (me), I regret, perf. *piguit*, or *pigitum est*.

poenitet (me), I repent, perf. *poenituit*.

pudet (me), I am ashamed, perf. *puduit*, or *puditum est*.

taedet (me), I am disgusted, perf. *pertaesum est*, and rarely *taeduit*.

oportet (me), it is necessary for me, I must, perf. *oportuit*.

203. The following have no personal subject, but may have

the name of a thing in its place, and are also used in the third person plural with a neuter plural as their subject :—

dēcet (*me*), it becomes me, perf. *dēcuit*.

dēdēcet (*me*), it does not become me, *dēdēcuit*.

libet or *libet* (*mihi*), I like, choose, perf. *libuit*, or *libitum est*.

licet (*mihi*), I am permitted, perf. *licuit*, or *licitum est*.

liquet, it is obvious, perf. *licuit*.

We may accordingly say, *hic color eum decet*, 'this colour is becoming to him;' *parva parvum decet*, 'small things become a small man;' *multa* or *omnia licent*, 'many or all things are permitted.'

204. A second class of impersonal verbs contains those which in the third person singular assume a peculiar meaning, differing from that which they have in the other persons. They are accordingly personal verbs, and impersonal only in a peculiar sense. The most common among them are—

interest and *rēfert*, it is of importance to.

accidit, *evenit*, *contingit*, or *fit*, it happens.

accēdit, it is added to, or in addition to.

attinet and *perlinet* (*ad*), it concerns or pertains to.

conducit, it is conducive.

convēnit, it suits.

constat, it is known or established.

expēdit, it is expedient.

dēlectat and *jūvat* (*me*), it delights me.

fallit, *fūgit*, and *praeterit* (*me*), it escapes me.

plācet, it pleases, perf. *plācuit*, or *plācitum est*.

praestat, it is better.

restat, it remains.

vacat, it is wanting.

est, in the sense of *licet*, it is permitted or possible — as *est videre*.

205. The third person singular passive is very often used impersonally, especially of intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive. This mode of speaking is employed to indicate generally that an action takes place, without attributing it to any definite person—as *curritur*, 'running is going on,' or 'people run;' *vivitur*, 'people live;' *ventum est*, 'people came,' or 'have come;' *dormitur*, 'sleeping is going on,' or 'people sleep.' The compound tenses of such passives have the participle only in the neuter—as *ventum est*; and in like manner the gerundive occurs only in the neuter in connection with *esse*—as *pugnandum est*, 'it is necessary to fight;' *veniendum est*, 'it is necessary to come.'

ADVERBS.

206. Adverbs are indeclinable words qualifying adjectives, verbs, or other adverbs, to which they stand in the same relation as adjectives to substantives—as *valde strenuus*, ‘very energetic;’ *bene loquitur*, ‘he speaks well;’ *epistola male scripta*, ‘a badly-written letter;’ *satis bene scriptum*, ‘tolerably well written.’

207. All adverbs, so far as their form is concerned, may be divided into three classes:—1. Primitive adverbs—as *saepe*, often; *nunc*, now; to which may be added prepositions when used as adverbs—as *ante*, before; *post*, after.—2. Adverbs derived from adjectives by the terminations *ē*, *o*, *ter* (answering to the English *ly*)—as *docte*, learnedly; *merito*, deservedly; *fortiter*, bravely; or the adjective in its neuter form—as *facile* (from *facilis*), easily.—3. Adverbs which are in reality particular cases or forms of substantives, pronouns, or adjectives—as *noctu* (an old ablative), by night; *partim* (an old accusative for *partem*), partly; *hic*, here; *qua*, where; *ibi* (from *is*), there; *ubi* (from *qui*), where. In regard to meaning, they chiefly express circumstances of place, time, manner, order, or degree.

208. The only inflection of which adverbs are capable is that of comparison. This, however, is limited almost entirely to those derived from adjectives.

209. The general rule for the comparison of adverbs is, that the neuter singular of the comparative of an adjective is at the same time its adverb; and that the superlative of an adjective is changed into that of an adverb by changing the termination *us* into *ē*—as *doctus*, adverb *doctē*; comparative *doctior*, neuter *doctius*, which is also an adverb; *doctissimē* is the adverb formed from the superlative *doctissimus*.

210. Primitive adverbs, and those formed from substantives and pronouns, except the following six, have no degrees of comparison:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>diū</i> (long),	<i>diūtius</i> ,	<i>diūtissimē</i> .
<i>saepe</i> (often),	<i>saepius</i> ,	<i>saeptissimē</i> .
<i>secus</i> (otherwise),	<i>secius</i> ,	_____
<i>tempēri</i> (in time),	<i>tempērius</i> ,	_____
<i>nūper</i> (lately),	_____	<i>nuperrimē</i> .
<i>satis</i> (enough, or sufficient),	<i>sātius</i> ,	_____

PREPOSITIONS.

211. Prepositions are not inflected: they simply denote in what relation or connection one person, thing, or action stands to another: *e. g.*, Rome is a town *in* Italy; I travel *through* England.

212. Many of the relations which we express in English by prepositions, are expressed in Latin by certain cases of nouns without a preposition, whereby the Latin language has the advantage of conciseness—as *domo*, ‘from home;’ *hoc modo*, ‘in this manner;’ *me ducente*, ‘under my guidance.’

213. Prepositions always exercise an influence upon the noun with which they are connected, and this influence is called government, rendering it necessary that the noun should be in a particular case.

214. According to the cases which prepositions govern, they are divided into three classes—

1. Prepositions governing the accusative are twenty-six in number:—

ad, to, up to, near, or nearly.
adversus, or *adversum*, opposite,
antē, before. [against.
apud, near, with.
circa, or *circum*, around, about.
circiter, about (in time or number.)
cis, or *citra*, on this side of.
contrā, against.
ergā, towards.
extrā, without (opposite of *intrā*.)
infrā, below, beneath.
inter, between, among.
intrā, within.

juxtā, near to or beside.
ob, against or on account of.
pēnēs, in the power of.
per, through.
pōnē, behind.
post, after.
præter, besides, excepting.
propter, on account of, close by.
secundum, next after, in accordance
suprā, above. [with.
trans, on the other side of, beyond.
ultrā, beyond.
versus, towards (a place.)

2. Prepositions governing the ablative are eleven in number:—

a, *ab*, or *abs*, from.
absquē, without (wanting.)
cōrām, in the presence of.
cum, with, together with.
dē, from, concerning.
e or *ex*, out of, of, from.

præ, before, in consequence of.
prō, before, instead of, for.
pōllam, with the knowledge of.
sine, without (that is, not with.)
tēnus, up to, as far as.

3. The following four prepositions govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative: the former, when

they denote motion towards; and the latter, when they denote rest, or being in a place:—

	<i>With the Accusative.</i>	<i>With the Ablative.</i>
<i>in,</i>	into, against,	in.
<i>sub,</i>	under, about, towards,	under.
<i>super,</i>	above, over,	upon, concerning.
<i>subter,</i>	under, beneath; generally with the accusative in either sense, rarely with the ablative.	

215. Prepositions are very frequently compounded with other words, and if the latter begin with a consonant, the preposition in many cases undergoes a change for the sake of euphony—as *attero* (for *adtero*), *aufero* (for *abfero*.)

There are certain particles which are never used by themselves, and are found only in composition with other words, whence they are called inseparable particles, or inseparable prepositions. They are *amb*, around; *dis*, asunder; *re*, or *red*, again or back; and *sē*, aside or without.

CONJUNCTIONS.

216. Conjunctions are indeclinable words, which shew the connection existing between sentences or clauses.

217. In form conjunctions are either simple or compound words—as *et*, *ac*, *at*, *sēd*, *vēl*, *aut*, *nam*; *atquē*, *quamvis*, *attāmēn*, *enimvērō*, *quamquam*.

218. In regard to their meaning, all conjunctions may be arranged in ten classes:—

1. Copulative conjunctions, whereby clauses are put in the relation of equality to one another, or are merely placed in juxtaposition, as—*et*, *quē*, *ac* and *atquē* (and); *etiam* (even, also); *nēquē*, or *nēc* (and not or nor); *nēc non*, or *nēquē non* (equivalent to *et*, and); *quoque* (also); *neque-neque*, or *nec-nec* (neither-nor); *vēl-vēl*, *sivē-sivē*, *aut-aut* (either-or); *mōdo-mōdo*, or *nunc-nunc* (sometimes-sometimes); *quum-tum* (both-and.)
2. Comparative conjunctions:—*ut*, *utī*, *sicut*, *vēlūt*, *proūt*, *praeūt*, and *ceu* (as, or like); *quam*, ‘than’; *tamquam*, *quasi*, *ut si*, *ac si*, ‘as if.’ Also *ac* and *atque* in the sense of ‘as’ and ‘than.’
3. Conjunctions denoting concession, all of which are rendered in English by ‘although,’ ‘though,’ and ‘even if’—as *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tāmetsi*, or *tāmenetsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibēt*, *licēt*, and sometimes *quum*; *quidē* or *equidē* signifies ‘indeed.’
4. Conditional conjunctions:—*sī* (if); *sin* (if however); *quodsī* (if therefore); *nīsī*, or *nī* (if not); *sīmōdō*, *dummōdō*, *dum*, *mōdō* (if only, if but); *dummōdō ne*, *modo nē*, or *dumnē* (if but not.)
5. Inferential conjunctions, meaning ‘therefore’—as *ergō*, *quātūr*, *idquē*, *eō*, *idēō*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *propterea*; to which may be added *quāpropter*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quōcircā* (wherefore); and *unde* (whence, or for which reason.)

6. Conjunctions denoting reason or cause:—*nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *idēnim* (for); *quā*, *quod*, *quōniam* (because); and *quippe*, *quum*, *quandō*, *quandōquidem*, and *siquidem* (since, or as.)
7. Conjunctions denoting a purpose or object:—*ut*, or *utī* (in order that); *quō* (in order that thereby); *nē*, or *ut nē* (in order that not); *nēvē*, or *neū* (and in order that not); *quān* (that not); *quōniam* (in order that not.)
8. Adversative conjunctions, all of which answer more or less to the English 'but,' or 'however':—*sēd*, *autem*, *vērūm*, *vērō*, *āt*, *āt enim*, *atquē*, *idēm*, *atidēm*, *sedidēm*, *vērūmidēm*, *at vērō*, *enimvērō*, *vērūm enimvērō*, *cēlērum*.
9. Conjunctions denoting time:—*quum*, *ūt*, *ubi*, *quandō* (when); *quum primum*, *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *simulac*, *simulatque*, or *simul* (as soon as); *postquam* (after); *antēquam*, *priusquam* (before); *dum*, *usque dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad* (until, as long as.)
10. Interrogative conjunctions:—*num*, *utrum*, *an*; the suffix *nē* (*nonnē*, *annon*), *necnē* (or not); and the prefixes *ec* and *en*.

These interrogative particles are generally untranslatable into English, since with us the interrogative nature of a clause is indicated by the position of the words.

INTERJECTIONS.

219. Interjections are indeclinable words, being sounds uttered to express some strong emotion. Such sounds expressing the emotions of joy, grief, wonder, surprise, &c. are pretty nearly the same in all languages. The following interjections are actually found in ancient authors:—

<i>io</i> , <i>iu</i> , <i>ha</i> (<i>ha</i>), <i>he</i> ,	are expressive of joy and delight.
<i>hei</i> , <i>heu</i> , <i>ēheu</i> , <i>pāpae</i> , <i>ō</i> , of grief (alas!)
<i>ō</i> , <i>prō</i> , or <i>prōh</i> , <i>āidī</i> , <i>hem</i> ,	} of astonishment and surprise.
<i>ehem</i> , <i>en</i> , <i>eccē</i> ,	
<i>hui</i> , <i>phui</i> , <i>vah</i> , <i>vae</i> , of contempt and disgust.
<i>heus</i> , <i>ō</i> , <i>ehō</i> , <i>ehodum</i> , of calling attention to something.
<i>eid</i> , <i>eugē</i> , of praise (well done! bravo!)
<i>ēvoe</i> , <i>evax</i> , of triumphant joy.

Interjections do not exercise any influence on the construction of a sentence. In Latin, as well as in English, it often happens that words which belong to other parts of speech are used as interjections. Those most commonly occurring are—

Nouns—*par*! peace! be still!—*infandum*! shame!—*miserum*! wretched!
—*maclē*! (voc. sing.), *maclī*! (voc. plur.), or *maclē virtute*!
admirable! bravo!

Verbs—*age*! *agite*! come! or quick!—*cedo*! give up!—*sodes*! my good friend!

Advs. — *belle*! excellent! bravo!—*bene*! very well!—*cito*! quick!

All kinds of invocations of the gods may be regarded as interjections—as *per deos*! 'by the gods!'—*per deos immortales*! 'by the immortal gods!'—*mehercule*, *mehercle*, *hercle*! 'by Hercules!' Such exclama-

tions are sometimes accompanied by real interjections—as *proh* or *pro Jupiter!*—*pro dii immortales!*

ETYMOLOGY IN GENERAL.

220. All the actual words of a language are *simple*, *derivative*, or *compound*. The basis of both simple and derivative words is called the stem. A stem by itself does not convey any distinct meaning, but becomes significant by the addition of certain suffixes. Thus the stem *duc*, by the addition of *s*, becomes the substantive *dux* = *dux* (leader), and by the addition of *o* it becomes the verb *duco* (I lead.) Words thus formed from a stem, by the simple addition of a suffix to give to the stem a definite meaning, are called simple words.

221. Derivative words may, like simple ones, be traced at once to their stem, but it is customary to trace them only to the simple ones; for a simple word conveys distinctly the idea of what is indistinctly contained in the stem, whereas a derivative word gives a modification of the idea conveyed by the simple word. As *ama*, verb *amo*, I love; from *amo*, is formed *amabilis*, amiable; *amabilitas*, amiability; and *amator*, lover.

222. Derivative words are formed from simple ones by derivative suffixes, also called simply suffixes, as in the above example, *bilis*, *bilitas*, and *tor*. The same derivative suffix generally modifies in the same way all words to which it is added.

1. Derivative suffixes are generally appended to the stem of a word, such as it appears when divested of those simple suffixes by which it becomes a distinct word—as from *miles* (stem *milit*) are derived *militaris*, *militia*; *frango* (stem *frag*), *fragilis*, *fragor*; *semen* (stem *semin*), *seminarium*.

In substantives of the first, second, and fourth declensions, the final vowels of the stem *a* and *u(s)* are usually thrown out—as *filia*, *filiola*; *luna*, *lunula*; *hortus*, *hortulus*.

2. Verbs of the first and second conjugations generally drop *ā* and *ē* before those derivative suffixes which begin with a vowel—as *amo* (stem *ama*), *amor*; *palleo* (stem *palle*), *pallor*.
3. The *e* in verbs of the second conjugation is dropped also before consonants, except in those verbs which make their perfect in *ei*.
4. When the stem ends in a consonant, and the derivative suffix begins with one, a connecting vowel (*i* or *u*) is often inserted between them, or one of the consonants is thrown out—as in *fulmen* (from *fulgeo*, stem *fulg*.) The latter is the case especially when the stem ends in *v*—as *mōtus*, *mōbilis* (from *moveo*, stem *mov*); *adjutor* and *adjumentum* (from *juvo*.)
5. When the stem of a verb ends in *a*, *e*, *i*, or *u*, these vowels are

generally lengthened before the derivative suffix—as *velāmen*, *complēmentum*, *molīmen*, *volūmen*.

6. In forming nouns from verbs by suffixes beginning with *t*, the stem undergoes the same change as in the formation of the supine ending in *tum*; whence it may be said that they are formed from the supine—as *amator* (from *amo*, *amatum*), *lector* (from *lego*, *lectum*.)

DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES FROM VERBS, SUBSTANTIVES, AND ADJECTIVES.

223. The most natural way of deriving words from others is generally to form the stem into a verb, and then to deduce from that verb all other derivatives.

224. We shall here enumerate the different suffixes by means of which substantives are derived from verbs, substantives, and adjectives, treating first of substantives derived from verbs.

1. Substantives are derived from verbs (chiefly intransitives of the first three conjugations) by adding the suffix *or* to the pure stem (that is, after the *a* and *e* of the first and second conjugations are dropped); and such substantives express the action or condition substantively—as *amor*, *error*, *clamor*, from *amo*, *erro*, *clamo*.
 2. Substantives are formed from verbs by adding *or* to the stem as it appears in the supine—that is, by changing *um* into *or*. These denote a male person performing the action implied in the verb—as *amator*, a lover; *adjutor*, a helper.
- From many of these substantives in *tor*, feminines may be formed by changing *tor* into *trix*—as *victor*, *victrix*. Those in *sor* sometimes make feminines in *strix*—as *tonsor*, *tonstrix*; but *expulsor*, throwing out the *s*, makes *expultrix*.
3. Substantives denoting abstractly the action or condition expressed by a verb are formed from the supine by changing the termination *um* into *io*, gen. *iōnis*—as *tractatio* (from *tracto*, *tractatum*.)
 4. Substantives with the termination *us* (fourth declension), are likewise formed from verbs by changing the supine ending *um* into *us*. Their meaning is very nearly the same as that of substantives in *io*, and in some cases the same verb admits the formation of substantives both in *io* and in *us*—as *contemptio*, *contemptus*; *concurso*, *concursus*. In some words of this kind in *io*, the abstract idea of what is implied in the verb is lost—as in *legio*, a legion; *coenatio*, a dining-room; *regio*, a district.
 5. There are a few verbs from which substantives in *igo* are formed, denoting an action or a condition which is the result of the action—as *origo*, origin (from *orior*); *vertigo*, turning or whirl (from *verto*.)
 6. Substantives in *men* (gen. *mīnis*) derived from verbs denote the thing performing the action expressed by the verb, or serving the purpose of performing the action. In some cases *men* is affixed to the stem—as *flumen* (a river, from *fluo*), *velamen* (a cover, from *velo*), *lumen* (a light, from *luceo*, the *c* being thrown out.) In others a connecting vowel (*i* or *u*) is introduced between the stem and *men*—as *regimen* (from *rego*), *specimen* (from *specio*.) In many cases the

ending *men* is lengthened by the addition of *tum*, without producing any change of meaning—as *velamen*, *velamentum*. The termination *mentum*, however, occurs more frequently in words which have no form in *men*—as *ornamentum*, *instrumentum*.

7. Substantives ending in *culum* (contracted *dum*) or *bulum* are derived from the stem of verbs, sometimes with, and sometimes without, a connecting vowel; these denote the instrument, and sometimes the place, of the action expressed by the verb—as *gubernaculum* (rudder, from *gubernare*), *coenaculum* (dining-room, from *coeno*.) If the stem of the verb ends in *c* or *g*, the termination is *ulum*—as *cingulum* (from *cingo*.)

225. Substantives are derived from other substantives in a variety of ways: a very common process is to form feminine substantives from masculines. This is the case especially with names of animals ending in *er* or *us*, from which feminines are formed by adding *a* to the stem of the word instead of the masculine termination—as *asinus*, *asina*; *equus*, *equa*.

1. By the terminations *lus* (*la*, *lum*) and *culus* (*cula*, *culum*), diminutives are formed from other substantives. Such diminutives denote primarily a small thing, but are used also as terms of endearment or contempt—as *hortulus*, a small garden; *filiolus*, dear little son; *homunculus*, a contemptible little man. All diminutives are of the same gender as the substantives from which they are formed, so that if the primitive is a masculine, the diminutive must end in *lus* or *culus*; if a feminine, in *la* or *cula*; and if neuter, in *lum* or *culum*.
2. The termination *ium*, when added to the stem of substantives denoting persons, expresses an assemblage or an association—as *collega*, a colleague; *collegium*, an assembly of colleagues; *sacerdos*, *sacerdotium*; *conviva*, *convivium*. When *ium* is added to verbal substantives in *tor*, it denotes the place where the action is going on—as *auditor*, *auditorium*; *conditor*, *conditorium*.
3. The termination *atus*, suffixed to words denoting persons, expresses position or office—as *consul*, *consulatus*; *tribunus*, *tribunatus*. The same thing is sometimes expressed by the suffix *ura* being added to the stem—as *dictator*, *dictatura*.
4. Substantives derived from others by the suffix *arius* denote persons pursuing as a trade that which is implied in the primitive—as *aqua*, *aquarius*; *sica*, *sicarius*; *argentum*, *argentarius*; *mensa*, *mensarius*. Those derived from others by the termination *arium* denote a place where the things expressed by the primary word are collected and kept—that is, a receptacle—as *granum*, *granarium*; *semen*, *seminarium*.
5. The termination *etum*, suffixed to the stem of names of plants denotes the place where they grow—as *oliva*, *olivetum*; *myrtus*, *myrtetum*.
6. The termination *ile*, when added to names of animals, denotes the place in which they are kept—as *ovis*, *ovile*; *bos*, *bovile*. In like manner are formed *cubile* (a place for lying), and *sedile* (a place for sitting), from *cubo* and *sedeo*.
7. The termination *ina*, when added to names of persons, denotes a business, pursuit, or the place where it is carried on—as *medicus*, *medicina*; *sutor*, *sutrina*.

8. Some substantives are derived from others by the ending *io*, and denote persons occupying themselves with that which is expressed by the primitive—as *restis* (rope), *restio* (ropemaker); *centurio* (a centurion), from *centuria* (a division of a 100); *pellis* (skin), *pellio* (skinner.)
9. A few substantives denoting a condition or quality are derived from names of persons by adding *tus* to the stem—as *vir*, *virtus*; *senex*, *senectus*.

226. Substantives denoting quality are formed from adjectives by the following terminations:—

1. *tas* added to the stem of the adjective, together with the connecting vowel *ī*, produces substantives denoting a quality abstractedly—as *bonus*, *bonitas*; *asper*, *asperitas*. Adjectives ending in *ius* take the connecting vowel *ē*—as *pīus*, *pīetas*; and those in *stus* take no connecting vowel at all—as *honestus*, *honestas*. In these last cases one *t* is dropped, as no consonant can be doubled when preceded by another.
2. *ia* added to the stem is principally used to form substantives from adjectives and participles of one termination for all genders—as *audax*, *audacia*; *concor*, *concordia*; *clemens*, *clementia*. But the same termination is also used to form substantives from adjectives ending in *cundus*—as *facundus*, *facundia*.
3. *tia*, with the connecting vowel *ī*, serves to form substantives from a few adjectives, the stem of which ends in *t* or *r*—as *justus*, *justitia*; *avarus*, *avaritia*; but *pudicitia* and *tristitia* are from *pudicus* and *tristis*.
4. *tūdo*, with the connecting vowel *ī*, is employed to form substantives from adjectives of two or of three terminations—as *altus*, *altitudo*; *similis*, *similitudo*. Some adjectives, whose stem ends in *t*, require no connecting vowel—as *consuetus*, *consuetudo*.
5. *mōnia*, preceded by the connecting vowel *ī*, occurs only in a few substantives—as *sanctus*, *sanctimōnia*; *castus*, *castimōnia*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS, SUBSTANTIVES, AND PROPER NAMES.

227. Adjectives are derived from verbs as well as from common and proper nouns, and a few from other adjectives and adverbs.

228. Adjectives are derived from verbs by means of the following suffixes:—

1. *dus*, added to the stem of verbs of the second conjugation, with the change of *e* into *ī*, produces adjectives denoting the condition or quality implied in the verb—as *caleo*, *calidus*; *frigeo*, *frigidus*; but we have also *rapīdus*, from *rapio*.
2. *lis*, preceded by the connecting vowel *ī*, added to stems of verbs ending in a consonant, denotes the capability of enduring the action implied in the verb—as *frango*, *fragilis*; *facio*, *facilis*. The same meaning is still more frequently produced by the suffix *ilis*,

which is sometimes preceded by the connecting vowel *i*—as *amo*, *amabilis*.

3. *ax*, added to the stem of a verb, produces adjectives denoting inclination or propensity, and in most cases a censurable one—as *pugno*, *pugnax*; *audeo*, *audax*. Sometimes the suffix *ax* gives to the verb merely the meaning of a present participle—as *minor*, *minax* = *minans*.
4. *cundus* is less frequently employed to derive adjectives denoting capability, inclination, or approximation—as *iracundus*, of an angry disposition (from *irascor*); *facundus*, eloquent (from *facio*.)
5. *lus*, with the connecting vowel *i* added to the stem of verbs, produces adjectives either simply denoting an action or the inclination to it—as *patet*, *patulus* (being open); *credo*, *credulus* (credulous.)
6. *uus* forms adjectives of a passive meaning, from transitive verbs—as *conspiciuus*, *individuus*; and others of an active meaning from intransitives—as *assiduus*.

229. Adjectives are formed from substantives by a great variety of terminations, some of which present scarcely any difference in meaning, and cannot therefore be clearly defined in every instance.

1. *eus*, added to the stem of substantives, produces adjectives denoting the material of which a thing consists or is made—as *lignum*, *ligneus*.
2. *cius*, preceded by the connecting vowel *i* added to the stem of a substantive, produces adjectives denoting that a thing consists of what is implied in the substantive or belongs to it—as *later*, *latericius*. Sometimes adjectives are formed by the suffix *icius* from the supine of verbs—as *commentum*, *commenticius*.
3. *aceus* forms adjectives almost exclusively from substantives of the first declension, denoting a substance or a resemblance to it—as *argilla*, *argillaceus*.
4. *cus*, preceded by the connecting vowel *i*, forms adjectives which denote belonging or relating to a thing—as *civis*, *civicus*. Sometimes the suffix *ticus* is employed in the same way—as *rus*, *rusticus*.
5. *ilis*, appended to the stem of substantives, produces adjectives denoting what is in accordance with, like, or becoming to that which is expressed by the substantive—as *civis*, *civilis*; *hostis*, *hostilis*; *vir*, *virilis*.
6. *alis* serves to form adjectives of the same meaning as those ending in *ilis*, but is employed much more frequently—as *annus*, *annalis*. When the stem of the substantive ends in *l*, or its last syllable begins with *l*, *alis* mostly becomes *āris*—as *populus*, *populāris*.
7. *ius* forms adjectives denoting suitableness, belonging or peculiar to the idea expressed by the substantive—as *rex*, *regius*; *pater*, *patrius*. This suffix is appended only to substantives denoting persons; and those words in *or*, which do not denote persons, form adjectives by simply adding *us* to the nominative—as *odor*, *odorus*.
8. *inus* makes adjectives, especially from names of animals, denoting what belongs to, or is derived from, that expressed by the substantives, most commonly the flesh of the animals—as *divus*, *divinus*; *mare*, *marinus*; *fera*, *ferinus*; *canis*, *caninus*; but from *bos*, *ovis*, and *us*, we have *bubulus*, *ovillus*, and *suillus*.

9. *ānus*, added to the stem of substantives, makes adjectives denoting a resemblance, or belonging to what is expressed by the substantive—as *urbs*, *urbānus*; *mons*, *montānus*. In like manner are formed adjectives from ordinal numerals, to denote that which belongs to the number implied—as *quartāna febris*, a fever lasting for four days; *primānus*, belonging to the first legion.
10. *ārius*, added to the stem of substantives, makes adjectives signifying that something belongs, or has reference, to what is implied in the substantive—as *legio*, *legionārius* (belonging to a legion); *grex*, *gregārius*, belonging to a flock. *ārius* also makes adjectives from distributive numerals, to denote the quality of having a certain number of units—as *deni*, *denārius* (a coin containing ten units—that is, *ases*); *septuagenārius*, a man who has lived seventy years; *numerus ternārius*, the number three—that is, containing three units.
11. *ivus*, added to the stem of substantives, forms adjectives denoting that which belongs to, or is fit for, the thing expressed by the substantive—as *furtum*, *furtivus*; *festum*, *festivus*. When added to the stem of participles, it denotes the manner in which a thing has arisen—as *natus*, *nativus*; *captus*, *captivus*.
12. *ōsus*, added to the stem of substantives, produces adjectives denoting fullness of what is expressed by the substantive or bringing it about—as *calamitas*, *calamitōsus*; *lapis*, *lapidōsus*. Sometimes the connecting vowel *i* is introduced—as *artifex*, *artificiōsus*.
13. *lentus*, with the connecting vowel *ū* or *ō* added to the stem, denotes fullness or manner—as *fraus*, *fraudulēntus*; *vis*, *violēntus*.
14. *ātus*, added to the stem of a substantive, forms numerous adjectives denoting possession of what is expressed by the substantive—as *ansa*, *ansātus*; *barba*, *barbātus*.

230. For the sake of convenience, all proper names may be divided into names of persons, towns, and countries, to shew in what manner adjectives are formed from each of these three classes.

1. The Roman Gentile names ending in *ius*—as *Fabius*, *Cornelius*—are in reality adjectives, and are used as such to designate the works of persons bearing those names—as *lex Cornelia*, *lex Julia*. Other adjectives in *ānus*, however, are formed from these names to denote things which have reference to a member of a family or gens, and are named after him—as *jus Flavianum* (from *Flavius*.)
2. From Roman surnames (cognomen) are formed adjectives ending in *ānus*, sometimes with the connecting vowel *i*, and with the same meaning as those in *ānus* derived from Gentile names—as *Cicero*, *Ciceroniānus*; *Caesar*, *Caesariānus*. The ending *ivus* is more rare—as *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthinus*.

231. Adjectives are formed from names of towns by the suffixes *ānus*, *ivus*, *as*, and *ensis*; they denote belonging to the place from which they are derived, and are therefore used as names for the inhabitants.

1. *ānus* forms adjectives from names of towns ending in *a*, *ae*, *um*, and *i*—as *Roma*, *Romānus*; *Formiæ*, *Formiānus*; *Tusculum*, *Tusculānus*; *Fundi*, *Fundānus*.

2. *inus* makes adjectives from names of towns ending in *ia*, *ium*—as *Ameria*, *Amerinus*; *Lanuvium*, *Lanuvinus*; but *Praeneste* and *Reate* also make *Praenestinus* *Reatinus*. Some names of Greek towns make adjectives by the same suffix—as *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*; *Saguntum*, *Saguntinus*.
3. *as* (gen. *ātis*) forms adjectives from some names of towns ending in *a*, *ae*, and *um*—as *Capena*, *Capenas*; *Fidenae*, *Fidenas*; *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Antium*, *Antias*.
4. *ensis* is employed to derive adjectives from names of towns ending in *o*, and from some ending in *a*, *ae*, or *um*—as *Narbo*, *Narbonensis*; *Athenae*, *Atheniensis*.
5. *us* makes adjectives from Greek names of towns and islands in *us*, *um*, *on*, and some others—as *Corinthus*, *Corinthius*.

232. Of the names of nations, some are real adjectives, and are used as such—as *Latinus*, *Romanus*, *Sabinus*; e.g., *lingua Latina*, ‘the Latin language;’ *nomen Romanum*, ‘the Roman name.’ But others are real substantives, and from them are formed adjectives by means of the termination *icus*—as *Gallus*, *Gallicus*; *Arabs*, *Arabicus*; or by the ending *ius*—as *Syrus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*. When persons are spoken of, however, the adjective is not used, but the substantive, which stands in apposition to the name of the person—as *miles Gallus*, ‘a Gallic soldier;’ *servus Thrax*, ‘a Thracian slave.’

233. Names of countries ending in *ia*, and formed from the names of nations, sometimes admit of the formation of adjectives, to denote that which belongs to, or comes from, the country—as *pecunia Siciliensis*, ‘money derived from the country of Sicily,’ not from the inhabitants; *exercitus Hispaniensis*, ‘a Roman army stationed in Spain,’ and not an army consisting of Spaniards.

DERIVATION OF VERBS FROM SUBSTANTIVES, ADJECTIVES, AND OTHER VERBS.

234. The number of verbs derived from substantives and adjectives is not very great. As a general rule, it may be observed that intransitive verbs formed from nouns follow the second conjugation—as *flos*, *florere* (flourish); *albus*, *albere* (be white); whereas transitive verbs follow the first conjugation—as *fraus*, *fraudare* (deceive); *albus*, *albare* (whitewash.) There are a few verbs of the fourth conjugation formed from substantives in *is*—as *finis*, *finire* (end); *vestis*, *vestire* (clothe.)

235. Many deponents of the first conjugation are derived from substantives and adjectives, and most of them have an intransitive meaning—as *philosophus*, *philosophor* (I am a

philosopher); *Graecus*, *Graecor* (I conduct myself like a Greek.) They have more rarely a transitive meaning—as *osculum*, *osculator* (I kiss.) A few deponents formed from nouns follow the fourth conjugation—as *pars*, *partior* (divide); *sors*, *sortior* (obtain by chance.)

236. Derivative verbs are much more frequently formed from simple verbs by means of certain suffixes which modify their meaning.

1. By means of the suffix *ito* (in deponents, *itor*) are formed what are called frequentative verbs—that is, such as denote repetition of an action. All frequentative verbs belong to the first conjugation. In verbs of the first conjugation this suffix is appended to the real stem of the word—as *clamo*, *clamito*; *minor*, *minitor*. In verbs of the third conjugation, as well as in those of the second and fourth which make their supine in the same manner as those of the third, the suffix *ito* is appended to the stem as it appears in the supine—as *lego*, *lectito*; *dico*, *dictito*.
2. Another class of frequentative verbs, with the same meaning, are formed by adding the termination of the first conjugation to the stem of simple verbs, such as it appears in the supine—as *curro*, *curso*, *cursare*; *tueor*, *tutor*, *tutari*. In this manner some verbs have two frequentatives—as *curro*, *curso*, and *cursito*; *dico*, *dicto*, and *dictito*.

237. Inchoative verbs—that is, such as denote the beginning of the action implied in the primitive verb—are formed by means of the suffix *sco*. This suffix is appended to the stem of the verb, such as it appears in the infinitive after removing the termination *re*; but in the third conjugation, the connecting vowel *i* is inserted between the stem and the suffix. All inchoatives follow the third conjugation:—*labo*, *labasco*, I begin to waver; *caleo*, *calesco*, I begin to be warm; *gemo*, *ingemisco*.

238. Many inchoatives are derived from substantives and adjectives—as *puer*, *puerasco*; *silva*, *silvesco*; *ignis*, *ignesco*.

239. Desiderative verbs—that is, such as denote a desire to do that which is implied in the primitive verb—are formed by the suffix *urio* appended to the stem, such as it appears in the supine—as *edo*, *esurio*, I desire to eat, or am hungry; *emo*, *empturio*, I wish to buy. All desideratives follow the fourth conjugation.

240. Diminutive verbs are formed by the suffix *illo* being appended to the stem. These are few, and they all follow the first conjugation—as *canto*, *cantillo*, I sing in an under voice, or shake; *conscribo*, and *conscribillo*, I scribble.

241. There is a number of intransitive verbs from which

transitives are formed by changing the conjugation to which they belong, and sometimes also by changing the quantity of the vowel contained in the stem, as—

<i>fūgio</i> , I flee.	<i>fūgo</i> , āre, put to flight.
<i>jaceo</i> , I lie.	<i>jacio</i> , ēre, throw.
<i>pendeo</i> , I hang.	<i>pendo</i> , ēre, weigh, or suspend.
<i>liquo</i> , I am clear, or fluid.	<i>liquo</i> , āre, clear.
<i>caedo</i> , I fall.	<i>caedo</i> , fell, or cause to fall.
<i>sēdeo</i> , I sit.	<i>sēdo</i> , appease, or cause to sit still.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

242. Adverbs are derived from adjectives (participles), numerals, substantives, pronouns, and verbs, and sometimes also from other adverbs and from prepositions.

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives and participles by the suffixes *ē*, *ō*, and *tēr*.
 - (a.) Adverbs in *ē* are formed from adjectives and participles belonging to the second and first declensions—that is, from those ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um*—as *altus*, *altē*; *longus*, *longē*. *Bonus* makes its adverb irregularly *bēnē*, and *malus* makes *mālē*; and these two are the only adverbs of this class in which the final *e* is short.
 - (b.) A limited number of adjectives of the second and first declensions form adverbs by adding the suffix *ō* to the stem—as *tutus*, *tutō*; *creber*, *crebrō*.
2. All adjectives and participles belonging to the third declension make their adverbs by adding the suffix *tēr* to the stem: between the two, however, the connecting vowel *i* is commonly inserted—as *gravis*, *graviter*; *acer*, *acriter*; *felix*, *feliciter*. When the stem of an adjective ends in *t*, the connecting vowel is not used, and one *t* is thrown out—as *sapiens*, *sapienter*; *prudens*, *prudenter*.
3. There is a number of adjectives from which no regular adverbs are formed, and in which the neuter (in the accusative singular) supplies its place—as *facilis*, *facile*; *recens*, *recens* (recently); *multus*, *multum*; *primus*, *primum*, and all the ordinal numerals.

By means of the suffix *itus*, adverbs are formed from some substantives to denote origin from the thing implied by the substantive—as *coelum*, *coelitus*, from heaven; *fundus*, *funditus*, from the foundation, completely.

Many adverbs are formed from the supine of verbs by means of the suffix *im*, and they generally denote manner—as *caesim*, by way of cutting down.

In a similar manner adverbs are formed from nouns by the termination *atim*—as *grex*, *gregatim*; *gradus*, *gradatim*.

Some adverbs in *o* are formed from prepositions to denote motion towards a place—as *citro*, *ultra*, *retro* (from the inseparable particle *re*.)

These are formed on the same principle as those derived from pronouns, such as *eo*, *quo*.

There is a considerable number of words which are used as adverbs, but which are in reality the ablative or accusative of nouns used in the sense of adverbs—as *noctu*, by night; *vesperi*, in the evening; *mane*, in the morning.

A large number of adverbs are formed by the composition of two or more words belonging to different parts of speech—as *quamdiu*, *hodie* (*hoc die*), *nudius tertius* (*nunc dies tertius*), *imprimis* (*in primis*), *ilicet* (*ire licet*), *illico* (*in loco*), *cominus* (*cum* and *manus*), *eminus* (*e* and *manus*).

Respecting numeral adverbs, see No. 93.

FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

243. Compound words are those which consist of two or more words, each of which by itself conveys a distinct notion; but a compound word, nevertheless, expresses only one idea, made up of those contained in the separate words of which it consists. Thus from *de* and *scribo* we make the compound *describo*; and from *pater* and *familia* we make *paterfamilias*.

There are some compound words which, although they express only one idea, are yet treated as two distinct words (for example, in declension), and even admit of other words being inserted between them—as *respublica*, *resquepublica*; *jus* *jurandum*, *jusve* *jurandum*; *senatus-consultum*, *unusquisque*, *alteruter*, and some others. These may be termed spurious compounds. But there are some genuine compounds, especially verbs compounded with a preposition, which in poetry are sometimes separated from each other by the insertion of a particle—as for *et* *illigatus*, we find *inque* *ligatus*; for *insalutatusque*, we find *inque* *salutatus*. The same is occasionally the case with the compound adverbs *hactenus*, *eatenus*, *quadamtenus*; as in Horace—*quadam* *prodire* *tenus*. Adjectives compounded with *per* are sometimes separated even by prose writers—as *per* *mihi* *mirum* *visum* *est* for *permirum* *mihi* *visum* *est*. The same is likewise the case with *quicunque*, *qualiscunque*, and *quilibet*.

244. The class of words to which a compound belongs is determined by the last of the words of which it consists—that is, if the last be a substantive, the whole compound is a substantive; if the last be a verb, the whole is a verb; and if the last be an adjective, the whole is an adjective.

245. The first part of a compound word is either a noun (substantive, adjective, or numeral), an adverb, or a preposition, and in a very few cases a verb.

There is besides a number of inseparable particles which have a distinct meaning, but do not occur by themselves, being found only prefixed to other words—namely, *amb* (about, around); *re*, or *red* (back, again); *se* (aside); *dis* (in different directions, the English *dis* in distribute); and the negatives *in* (the English *in* or *un*, as in *infallible*, *unjust*) and *ve*.

246. When the first word of a compound is a noun, the second is usually appended to the stem of the first; should the noun belong to the first, second, or fourth declensions, the vowels *a* and *u* are omitted; and if the second begins with a consonant, *i* is usually inserted between the two as a connecting vowel—as *magnanimus* (from *magnus* and *animus*), *corniger* (from *cornu* and *gero*.)

247. When the first word of a compound is a preposition or the negative *in*, the vowel of the second word (*ā*, *ē*, or *ae*) is very often changed—as *amicus*, *inimicus*; *arma*, *inermis*; *barba*, *imberbis*. But this is not always the case; for *maneo* makes *permaneo*; *traho*, *contraho*; &c.

It sometimes happens that a compound word belongs to a class of words different from the last part or element, and in this case the last receives a suitable termination to mark the class to which the whole belongs—as the adjective *maledicus*, from *male* and *dico*; *opifex*, from *opus* and *facio*. Sometimes, however, the addition of such a termination is unnecessary—as in *crassipes*, from *crassus* and *pes*; *discolor*, from *dis* and *color*.

Sometimes the last word in a compound assumes a derivative suffix, without which it cannot form a compound—as *exardesco*, from *ex* and *ardeo*; *latifundium*, from *latus* and *fundus*; *Cisalpinus*, from *Cis* and *Alpes*.



SYNTAX.

248. Syntax is that part of grammar which teaches how to combine words so as to form sentences.

249. All the rules of syntax may be arranged under two heads:—1. The rules of concord or agreement; 2. The rules of government and dependence.

RULES OF CONCORD BETWEEN SUBSTANTIVES AND WORDS WHICH QUALIFY THEM—APPOSITION.

250. Adjectives, pronouns, and declinable numerals, qualifying a substantive or a substantive pronoun in the same clause, must agree with it in gender, number, and case—as

<i>pater bonus</i> , a good father.		<i>duae arbores</i> , two trees.
<i>mater cara</i> , a dear mother.		<i>domus mea</i> , my house.

251. When one adjective (participle or pronoun) belongs to two or more substantives, it agrees either with the one nearest to it only, or it is repeated before each substantive—as

Omnes agri et maria, or *omnes agri et omnia maria*.
All lands and seas, or all lands and all seas.

If the substantives signify persons of different genders, the qualifying word must be in the masculine plural; but if any of them signify things without life, the qualifying word must be in the neuter plural.

When an adjective, a pronoun, or a numeral occurs in a different clause from that in which the substantive or substantive pronoun stands, it can agree with the substantive or substantive pronoun only in gender and number, the case being dependent on the nature of the clause in which it occurs—as *Amicus adest, sed eum non video*, The friend is here, but I do not see him.

252. Relative pronouns, which generally occur in a different clause from that containing the substantive to which they refer, agree with it only in gender and number; but when a

relative is joined to its substantive, it agrees with it in case also—as

quo die veneram,

on which day I had come; that is,
on the day on which I had come.

When a relative pronoun refers to more than one substantive it is usually put in the plural. If the substantives denote living beings of different genders, any of which are masculine, the relative takes the gender of the masculine—as *matres et parvuli liberi, quorum utrorumque aetas misericordiam requirit*; mothers and little children, the age of both of whom demands our sympathy.

If there be no masculine, but only feminines and neuters, the relative takes the feminine.

When substantives are names of inanimate objects, the relative is usually in the neuter plural—as *otium atque divitiae, quae prima mortales pulant*; ease and riches, which mortals regard as the principal things.

Sometimes, however, the relative agrees in number and gender only with the last of several substantives—that is, with the one nearest to it—as *eae fruges atque fructus, quos terra gignit*, where the *quos* agrees only with *fructus*.

Sometimes several names of inanimate things may be of the same gender, and the relative, instead of taking their gender in the plural, appears in the neuter plural—as *inconstantia et temeritas, quae digna certe non sunt deo*.

When a relative refers to a common noun joined to a proper name, it may agree either with the former or with the latter—as *flumen Rhenus, qui fluit*, and *flumen Rhenus, quod fluit*.

When a relative refers to a whole clause, and not to a single word, the neuter singular is used, before which the pronoun *id* is frequently added, the clause being treated as a neuter substantive—as *sapientes contenti sunt rebus suis, quod est summum bonum; si a vobis deserar, id quod non spero*.

When a relative pronoun refers to a substantive, which is explained by another in a clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, the relative may agree either with the preceding substantive or with the explanatory one which follows—as *animal, quod homo vocatur, or qui homo vocatur; veni ad locum, quem Pylas vocant, or quas Pylas vocant*.

253. One substantive may be in apposition to another, or take the place of a qualifying word: when qualifying another substantive, it generally stands after it, and must agree with it in case—as

Cicero orator interfectus est,

Cicero the orator was slain.

254. If the substantive which stands in apposition has two genders, it generally takes that of the substantive which it explains—as

aquila regina avium,

the eagle, the king of birds (because *aquila* is feminine.)

255. In other cases the apposition cannot agree in gender or number with the apposite substantive—as

Tullia, deliciae meae, Tullia, my delight.

256. When plural names of places have such words as *urbs*, *caput*, in apposition to them, these words are always used in the singular—as

Athenae, urbs Graeciae, Athens, a city of Greece.

AGREEMENT BETWEEN SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

257. Every sentence consists of two parts: the *subject*, which is the person or thing spoken of; and the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject.

As the Latin verb, in ordinary circumstances, does not require the addition of a personal pronoun, a sentence sometimes consists of a single word—as *dormio*, I am sleeping; *eo*, I go; *sedet*, he is sitting; *dicunt*, *ferunt*, they say.

The personal pronouns are expressed in Latin only when they are emphatic—as *ego feci*, *non ille*, I have done it, not he.

The subject of a sentence, when it is expressed, is generally a substantive, an adjective, or a pronoun; the two latter of which, however, must be regarded as representing substantives: *pater amat filium*; *ego curro*; *boni virtutem colunt*. But any word which is used as a substantive may be made the subject of a sentence, as is most frequently the case with the infinitive of a verb—as *errare humanum est*, where *errare* is the subject; *in errore perseverare turpe est*, where the expression *in errore perseverare* is the subject.

258. The subject of a sentence is generally in the nominative case; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is always in the accusative—as

credo eum bonum esse virum, I believe him to be a good man.

Here the first sentence consists of the word *credo*, and the subject of the infinitive *esse* is *eum*, which is accordingly in the accusative.

259. The predicate consists either of a verb or of a noun (adjective or substantive), joined to the subject by means of the verb *esse*—as

<i>arbor crescit,</i>	the tree is growing.
<i>urbs est splendida,</i>	the town is splendid.
<i>mors non est calamitas,</i>	death is not a misfortune.

260. When the predicate is a verb, it agrees with its subject in number and person—as

ego valeo,
tu dormis,
nos dolemus,

I am well.
thou sleepest.
we grieve.

Every substantive in the singular represents the third person singular, and every substantive in the plural the third person plural; e. g., *pater aegrotat*, the father is ill; *patres aegrotant*, the fathers are ill.

- a. When there are several subjects of different persons, one of which is a first person, the verb is put in the first person plural; if there be among them no subject of the first person, but one of the second, the predicate is put in the second person plural; and when all the subjects belong to the third person, the verb is put in the third person plural, precisely as in the English language—as *ego et pater meus ambulamus*, I and my father (we) are taking a walk; *tu et uxor tua estis in periculo*, thou and thy wife (you) are in danger; *feminae, liberi et senes interfecti sunt*, women, children, and old men (they) were killed.
- b. When there are several subjects of the third person, the predicate is plural, when the plurality of subjects is to be indicated, as is usually the case when the subjects are names of persons—as *Romulus et Remus urbem Romam condiderunt*. If, however, the several subjects may be conceived as forming only one whole—that is, one body of persons and things—the predicate is generally in the singular—as *senatus populusque Romanus intelligit*, where the people and senate form only one body of people.
- c. When one of several subjects is in the plural, the predicate is generally plural; but if the one nearest the predicate be singular, and is of particular importance, the predicate may agree with this subject alone—as *prodigia et eorum procuratio consules Romae (at Rome) tenuerunt*; *et Peripatetici et vetus Academia concedit*, where *concedit* agrees with the nearest subject.

261. When the predicate consists of an adjective or a participle, it agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case—as

miles est fortis,
militēs sunt fortes,
femina est timida,
feminae sunt timidae,
templum est splendidum,
templa sunt splendida,

the soldier is brave.
the soldiers are brave.
the woman is timid.
women are timid.
the temple is splendid.
the temples are splendid.

- a. When there are several subjects of the same gender, the predicate is either plural and of the same gender as that of the subjects; or, attaching itself more particularly to the one nearest to it, it remains singular.
- b. When the subjects are of different genders, the predicate may agree with the subject nearest to it, or it may be put in the plural; but in the latter case there are two conditions to be observed:—
1. If the subjects are names of persons, the predicate is commonly put in the plural of the masculine gender.

2. If the subjects are names of things, the predicate is commonly in the neuter plural.
- c. When the subjects consist of names of persons mixed with names of inanimate objects, the predicate may either agree in the plural with the gender of the names of persons, or may be put in the neuter plural—as *rex et regia classis profecti sunt*; *Romani regem regnumque Macedoniae sua futura sciunt*. But in these cases also, the predicate often agrees only with the subject nearest to it.

262. When the predicate consists of a substantive, it cannot, generally speaking, agree with the subject either in gender or in number—as

Maecenas est dulce decus meum, Maecenas is my delightful honour.

263. But when both the subject and the predicate denote persons or living beings, and when the substantive, used as predicate, has two genders, it agrees with its subject like an adjective—as

aquila est regina avium, the eagle is the king of birds.
philosophia est magistra vitae, philosophy is the instructor of life.

When the subject is accompanied by an apposition, the predicate generally agrees in number with the subject—as *Tullia, deliciae nostrae, tuum munusculum flagitat*. But when plural names of places have the apposition *urbs, oppidum*, or *civitas*, the predicate agrees with the latter—as *Athenae, urbs nobilissima Graeciae, a Sullae militibus direpta est*.

When the subject consists of an indeclinable word, or of a whole clause, it is regarded as a neuter noun in the singular, and the predicate accommodates itself to it as such—as *pro patria mori honestum est*, where the subject consists of the clause *pro patria mori*.

264. The real nature and meaning of the subject of a sentence is often more attended to than its grammatical form; the most common cases of this kind are the following—

1. Collective nouns—as *pars, vis, multitudo, uterque, quisque*, and others, when they are used as subjects—have the predicate frequently in the plural, agreeing in gender with the beings understood—as *pars peregrina Romam inermes delati sunt*; *missi sunt honoratissimus quisque*.
2. When males are expressed figuratively by feminine or neuter substantives, the predicate sometimes follows the natural rather than the grammatical gender of the words used—as *capita conjurationis virgis caesi ac securibus percussi sunt*. The same is often the case with the numeral substantive *millia*—as *millia triginta servilium capitum capti sunt*.
3. A subject in the singular, connected with another by the preposition *cum*, usually has the predicate in the plural—as *ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur*; *Ilia cum Lauso de Numitore sati*. The singular, however, may be used when the subjects are not conceived as performing an action or enduring it in common—as *Tu cum Sexto scire velin quid cogites*, where the main point is to know what thou (*tu*) art thinking, and not what the two together are thinking.

265. Adjectives in the masculine or neuter gender are often used as the subjects of sentences without their referring to distinct persons or things mentioned in a preceding sentence. In this case they are said to be used substantively, the masculine gender denoting human beings, *homo* or *homines* being understood, and the neuter things, either in the singular or plural—as

sapientes virtutem colunt,
inerti laborem fugit,
omne malum vitandum est,
mala fortunæ fortiter ferenda sunt,

the wise cultivate virtue.
the lazy flee labour.
every evil should be avoided.
misfortunes should be borne with
fortitude.

RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY THE NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES.

266. The nominative is the case which names the subject of a proposition—that is, the person or thing of which anything is predicated. Hence the subject of a sentence or clause is in the nominative case; and as the predicate must agree with the subject, the predicate also is in the nominative, when it consists of a declinable word, and is connected with the subject by means of the verb *esse*, or one of those verbs which express only modifications of the idea contained in *esse*—such as *fiō*, I become; *maneo*, I remain; *videor*, I appear or seem—as

Cicero fuit magnus orator,
Cicero fit consul,

Cicero was a great orator.
Cicero becomes consul.

The passive verbs *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *appellor*, *nuncupor*, *scribor*, *ducor*, *habeor*, *judicor*, *existimor*, *numenor*, *putor*, *intelligor*, *agnoscor*, *reperiō*, *invenior*, *reddor*, *creor*, *deligor*, *designor*, *declaror*, *renuntior*, and some others are accompanied by a noun as a predicate, which must, accordingly, like the subject, be in the nominative case—as *Numa rex creatus est*.

267. The accusative denotes the object of transitive verbs—that is, the person or thing affected by the action expressed by a transitive verb in its active form. The object of a transitive verb in the active voice is therefore expressed in the accusative—as

pater amat filium,
Caesar vicit Pompeium,

the father loves his son.
Caesar conquered Pompey.

Every sentence containing a transitive verb and an object (accusative) may be changed into the passive form by changing the accusative into the nominative (the object into the subject), and changing the nominative into the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab* before it

—as *filius a patre amatur*; *liber emitur a fratre*. The preposition *a* or *ab* in such cases denotes the quarter from which the action proceeds.

As to whether a verb be transitive depends entirely upon its meaning, so that the same verb may in one sense be transitive, while in another it is intransitive—as *consulo aliquem*, I consult a person; *consulo alicui*, I give a person advice, or take care of a person.

Many intransitive verbs denoting motion may, by being compounded with prepositions, and by thus modifying their meaning, become transitive, and accordingly govern the accusative—as *exercitus flumen transiit*, the army crossed the river.

Sometimes the preposition with which such a verb is compounded is repeated before the accusative—as *adire ad aliquem*, to go to a person. Most verbs compounded with *ob*, however, govern the dative.

268. Transitive verbs, compounded with the preposition *trans*—such as *traduco*, *trajicio*, *transporto*—have two accusatives, one of the object, and the other dependent upon the preposition, which is sometimes repeated before it—as

Hannibal copias Ibërum traduxit, Hannibal led his troops across the Ibërus.

269. The impersonal verbs *piget* (I am vexed), *pudet* (I am ashamed), *poenitet* (I repent), *taedet* (I am disgusted), and *miseret* (I pity), govern the accusative of the person in whom these feelings exist, and the genitive of the thing which causes them—as

pudet me facti,
miseret nos hominis,
piget puerum negligentiae,

I am ashamed of the deed.
we pity the man.
the boy is vexed at his carelessness.

270. *Decet* (it is becoming) and its compounds *dedecet*, *condecet*, and *indecet*, govern the accusative of the person to whom anything is or is not becoming. So also *latet* (it is concealed from, or unknown to.)

271. Many transitive verbs, conveying only an incomplete idea, govern, besides the accusative of the object, another which stands in the relation of a predicate to the object, and completes the idea contained in the verb. Verbs of this kind are those of creating, making, naming, electing, having, shewing, and the like—as

Romulus urbem Romam vocavit,
populus Numam regem creavit,
rex se clementem praebebat,

Romulus called the city Rome.
the people created Numa king.
the king conducted himself with clemency.

272. These verbs, when in the passive, are accompanied by two nominatives, one being the subject, and the other the predicate or in apposition to it—e. g.,

Cicero consul creatus est,

Cicero was created consul.

273. Some transitive verbs, which have the name of a person as their object, govern a second accusative of the thing which may be regarded as a second object. Such verbs are the following—

1. *Doceo* and *edocceo*, I teach; *dedoceo*, I cause to unlearn; *celo*, I conceal; e.g., *docere puellam litteras*, to teach a girl the letters. Sometimes the preposition *de* with the ablative is used instead of the accusative of the thing—as *docere aliquem de aliqua re*, to inform a person of a thing.
2. *Posco*, *reposco*, and *flagito* (I demand), *oro* (I pray), *rogo* (I ask), *interrogo* and *percontor* (I ask or question); e.g., *pacem te poscimus*, we demand peace of you. With these verbs the accusative of the thing remains unchanged when the verb is made passive—as *interrogatus sum sententiam*, I was asked for my opinion.
3. *Moneo*, *admoneo*, and *hortor* (I admonish), and *cogo* (I compel), when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective—as *te id unum moneo*, this one thing I give you as my advice. The accusative of the thing with these verbs remains unchanged when the verb becomes passive—as *multa monemur*, many admonitions are given to us.

274. The following prepositions always govern the accusative:—*ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *praeter*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *ultra*, *versus*. Comp. No. 214.

Ante and *post*, as prepositions, are put before the case they govern; but they are also used as adverbs, and as such are put after their case, which becomes the ablative instead of the accusative—as *ante multos annos*, before many years; but *multis annis ante*, many years before; *post tres dies*, after three days; but *tribus diebus post*, three days after.

275. The following four, which sometimes govern the accusative and sometimes the ablative, require special attention:—

1. *In* governs the accusative when it answers to the English 'into'; that is, when it denotes motion towards the interior of anything—as *in urbem ire*, *in civitatem recipere*, *in mare projicere*. Also, in a secondary sense, when it denotes activity directed towards something, or in general a tendency or direction towards something—as *scamnum habet sex pedes in longitudinem*; *oratio in Catilinam* (a speech directed against Catiline); *amor in patriam* (love directed towards one's country); *consistere in orbem* (to stand together so as to form a circle); *convineatus in tres annos* (provisions for three years.)
- In* governs the ablative when it denotes being in a place, answering to the English 'in'—as *in urbe esse*, *in horto ambulare*, *in flumine navigare*, *in campo currere*; and also in all derivative meanings, where no motion towards anything is expressed—as *in morbo*, in or during the disease; *in hoc homine*, in this man, or in the case of this man.
2. *Sub* governs the accusative when it denotes motion towards, so as to go under a thing—as *venire sub oculos*; also when it refers to time,

and signifies 'about'—as *sub idem tempus*, about the same time; *sub noctem*, towards night; *sub Hannibalis adventum*, about the time of Hannibal's arrival.

Sub governs the *ablative* when it denotes being *under* anything—as *sub muro*, *sub oculis*.

3. *Super* governs the *ablative*, only when it denotes 'about' or 'concerning'—as *super hac re ad te scribam*, I shall write to you about this matter. In all other cases it governs the *accusative*.
4. *Subter* is generally construed with the *accusative*; but with the *ablative* its use is almost confined to poetry.

276. Verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, denoting extent of time or space, govern the *accusative* of the noun describing that extent. Adjectives of this kind are *longus*, *latus*, *altus*, *crassus*; e. g.,

<i>hasta sex pedes longa,</i>	a lance six feet long.
<i>Troja decem annos oppugnata est,</i>	Troy was besieged ten years.

In like manner the participle *natus*, in the sense of 'old,' is joined with the *accusative* of the number of years which a person has lived—as *viginti annos natus est*, he is twenty years old; *sex annos natus*, six years old.

277. Names of towns and small islands are put in the *accusative* without any preposition to express motion towards them, when the question, whither? may be asked—as

<i>Romam profectus est,</i>	he has gone to Rome.
<i>legatos Athenas misit,</i>	he sent ambassadors to Athens.

278. In exclamations of wonder or grief at the state or condition of a person or a thing, the name of the person or thing is put in the *accusative* either with or without an interjection—as

heu me miserum! or *me miserum!* Oh, I, wretched man!

There are certain expressions in which the *accusative*, especially of neuter pronouns, stands for the *genitive* or *ablative*—as *id temporis*, at that moment of time, for *eo tempore*; *id* or *illud ætatis* for *ejus* or *illius ætatis*, of that age; *id* or *hoc genus* for *ejus* or *hujus generis*, of that kind.

USE OF THE DATIVE CASE.

279. The *dative* generally expresses the person or thing for which, or in regard to which, something is, or is done; it may therefore be termed the case of the remoter object. The English language generally expresses this relation by the prepositions 'to' or 'for'—as

Solon leges Atheniensibus scripsit, Solon wrote laws for the Athenians.

280. The dative accordingly is used with transitive verbs, when, besides their object, a person or thing is mentioned *to* which or *for* which the action is performed—as

exercitum collegae tradidit,

he surrendered the army to his colleague.

viam tibi monstro,

I shew you the way.

281. Many transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *cum*, *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, and *sub*, have, besides their real object, another noun, the relation to which is indicated by the prepositions; and this other noun is put in the dative both with the active and passive of such compound verbs—as

haec res mihi magnum commodum
affert,

this affair affords me a great advantage.

milites consuli circumfundebantur,

the soldiers were crowding around, the consul.

282. If, however, by such compound verbs, the idea of place contained in the prepositions is to be expressed more emphatically than the mere action contained in the verb, the preposition must be repeated with its proper case—as

signa inferre in hostes,

to carry the standards against the enemy.

283. The dative is joined with many intransitive verbs, such as those which denote benefiting, pleasing, injuring, and others.

The principal verbs of this kind are—*prosum*, *obsum*, *noceo*, *incommodo*, *expedit*, *conducit*; *adversor*, *obtreco*, *officio*, *cedo*, *suffragor*, *refragor*, *intercedo*, *gratificor*; *faveo*, *studeo*, *ignosco*, *indulgeo*, *invideo*, *insidior*; *auxilior*, *opitutor*, *patrocinor*, *consulo*, *prospicio*, *medeor*, *parco*; *placeo*, *displiceo*; *impero*, *obedio*, *obsequor*, *obtempero*, *pareo*, *servio*, *famulor*; *assentior*, *adulor*, *blandior*, *irascor*, *succenseo*, *convicior*, *maledico*, *minor*; *suadeo*, *persuadeo*; *credo*, *fido*, *confido*, *diffido*; *desum*, *nūbo*, *propinquo*, *appropinquo*, *supplicor*, *videor* (seem or appear); *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit*; *libet*, *licet*; *obviam eo*, *praesto sum*, *dicto audiens sum*.

284. Intransitive verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *cum*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, (*re* or *red*), *sub*, and *super*, follow the same rule as the compound transitives mentioned in number 282; e.g.,

adesse amicis,

to succour one's friends.

antecellere omnibus,

to surpass all.

285. The verb *esse* governs the dative in the sense of 'to be,' or 'to exist for a person's use;' and in such construction it must be rendered into English by the verb 'to have'—as

mihi sunt multi libri,
mihi nomen est,

I have many books.
 I have a name, or I am called.

In the last-mentioned instance, when the name is added, it may either be put in the nominative, so as to stand in apposition to *nomen*—as *nomen ipsi erat Romulus*—or the name may be a sort of attraction to the dative *ipsi* and be put in the dative—as *nomen ipsi erat Romulo*.

286. Adjectives generally govern the dative when they express qualities which exist for some person or thing; e.g.,

<i>pax reipublicae utilis erat,</i>	the peace was useful to the re- public.
<i>res tibi facilis, ceteris difficilis,</i>	a thing easy for you, difficult for others.

But the dative is joined in particular with those adjectives denoting a certain relation to something or somebody; such as those expressing a kindly or unkindly disposition, similarity, proximity; e.g., *amicus, inimicus, aequus, iniquus, propitius, infensus, infestus, obnoxius; par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, consentaneus, contrarius, aequalis; propinquus, propior, proximius, vicinus, finitimus, conterminus, affinis, cognatus; e.g., hic locus urbi propinquus est*, this place is near the city.

287. Names of towns and small islands are put in the dative, to denote the place where anything is or happens—as

<i>Romae,</i>	at Rome.
<i>Capuae,</i>	at Capua.
<i>Athenis,</i>	at Athens.

288. When the name belongs to the second or third declension, it takes the termination *i*—e.g.,

<i>Corinthis,</i>	at Corinth.
<i>Carthagini,</i>	at Carthage.

Instead of the termination *i* in names of the third declension, we sometimes find *e*, which is only a corruption for *i*—as *Carthagine*, at Carthage; *Lacedaemone*, at Lacedaemon.

289. The dative is used to denote the purpose which anything serves, or the effect it produces. This is the case especially with *esse* (in the sense of 'to serve the purpose of'), *do, habeo, mitto, venio, pono, duco, verto, tribuo*. It not unfrequently happens that such verbs are also accompanied by their ordinary dative—as

<i>cui bono est?</i>	to whom is it (does it) any good?
<i>est mihi et honori et utilitati,</i>	it does me honour and is useful to me.

290. With passive verbs the agent is sometimes expressed by the dative instead of the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*. This, however, is done more frequently in poetry than in

prose, and oftener with the compound tenses of the passive than with the simple ones—as

quidquid mihi (a me) susceptum est, whatever has been begun by me.
non intelligor ulli (ab ullo), I am not understood by any one.

291. The gerundive is regularly construed with the dative instead of the preposition *a* or *ab*—as

hoc mihi faciendum est, this must be done by me.
non omnibus eadem facienda sunt, not all men must do the same things.

USE OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

292. The genitive serves principally to denote that relation between two substantives by which the two conjointly express only one idea the genitive supplying the place of an adjective—as

castra hostium, the camp of the enemy—that is, the hostile camp.
domus patris, the house of the father—that is, the paternal house.

In speaking of the temple of a god, the words *aedes* and *templum* are often omitted, especially after the prepositions *ad* and *ab*—as *ad Opis* (*aedes*), near the temple of Ops; *ad Vestae*, near the temple of Vesta.

Substantives which are derived from transitive verbs, and have an active meaning, like all other substantives, govern a genitive; but this genitive may be of a twofold nature—namely *objective*, when it denotes the person or thing affected by the action implied in the substantive—as *amor patriae*, love for one's country; or *subjective*, when it denotes the person or thing from which the action implied in the governing substantive proceeds—as *amor parentum*, the love which parents entertain (for their children.)

One substantive is sometimes followed by another in the genitive, which contains in reality the same idea, and gives only a more specific explanation of it—as *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *arbor abietis*, a fir-tree; *nomen regis*, the name of king (but it may also be 'the name of the king.') In cases of this kind, the genitive is little more than one noun in apposition to another.

293. The genitive denotes the whole of which anything is a part, and is governed by the noun which expresses the part—as

magnus numerus militum, a large number of soldiers.
magna vis auri, a great quantity of gold.

294. When the nature, quality, size, or extent of anything is described by a substantive accompanied by an adjective (numeral, participle, or pronoun), the latter is put in the geni-

tive (genitive of quality), which is governed by the substantive which they explain—as

vir magni ingenii,
res magni laboris,

a man of great talent.
an undertaking of great labour.

Such a genitive of quality cannot be used when the substantive is not accompanied by an adjective; we cannot, therefore, translate 'a man of talent' by *homo ingenii*, but, using the adjective, by *ingeniosus homo*.

295. The genitive is governed by several adjectives denoting a quality existing in reference to certain things—that is, by relative adjectives, the meaning of which is not complete without the thing being added in regard to which it exists. Adjectives of this kind are—

1. All present participles of transitive verbs, when used as real adjectives, and all adjectives ending in *ax*, which are derived from transitive verbs—as *amans patriae*; *capax aquae*.
2. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, experience, remembrance, and their opposites—such as *avarus*, *avidus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, *consciū*, *insciū*, *nesciū*, *gnarus*, *ignarus*, *peritus*, *imperitus*, *prudens*, *rudis*, *insolens*, *insuetus*, *memor*, *immemor*, and others; and sometimes also those which denote foresight and want of care—such as *providus*, *diligens*, *curiosus*, *incuriosus*—as *cupidus gloriæ*, desirous of fame; *ignarus omnium rerum*, ignorant of all things; *memor beneficii*, remembering an act of kindness.
3. Adjectives denoting power over a thing, or the contrary, such as *compos*, *impos*, *potens*, and *impotens*—as *compos mentis*, in possession of one's mind; *impotens equi regendi*, unable to control the horse.
4. Adjectives denoting participation, such as *particeps*, *expers*, *consors*, *exors*, *reus*, *affinis*, *insons*—as *particeps consilii*, partaking in a plan or design; *expers periculorum*, not sharing the dangers.
5. Adjectives denoting abundance, fulness, or want, may govern either the genitive or the ablative; but *inops* (poor) is construed with the genitive only, and *plenus* more commonly with the genitive than with the ablative.
6. The adjectives *similis* and *dissimilis* are joined with both the genitive and dative; the same is the case with *proprius*, though the neuter in the sense of 'property' or 'peculiarity' is generally joined with the genitive—as *proprium est oratoris*, it is peculiar to an orator; but *tempus agendi mihi fuit proprium*, the time of action was convenient to me.

296. The verbs *sum* and *fio*, when they connect two substantives, and signify 'to belong to' and 'to come to belong to,' govern the genitive of the person to whom anything belongs—as

domus est patris,
omnia viri sunt,

the house belongs to the father.
all things come to belong to the man.

The genitive with *sum* often denotes the person or thing to which

anything belongs, is proper or becoming, or whose duty anything is—as *ista oratio non est hujus temporis*, that speech is not suited to this time; *non est mearum virium*, it is not proper for my strength—that is, I have not strength enough.

When the person to whom anything is a duty or becoming, is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, the Latins use the neuter of the possessive—as *meum est pro republica pugnare*, it is my duty to fight for the republic.

297. Verbs of remembering, forgetting, and reminding—as *memini*, *reminiscor* (*recordor*, rarely), *obliscor*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, and *commonefacio*, govern the genitive of the person or thing which is remembered, forgotten, or of which a person is reminded—as

semper hujus diei et loci meminero,

I shall always remember this day and place.

reminiscor beneficii tui,

I remember your kindness.

admonuit eos matris sororumque,

he reminded them of their mother and sisters.

The verbs of remembering and forgetting, especially *memini*, are often joined with the accusative—as *memini numeros*, *obliscor causam*, *amicum meum bene meministi*. This, however, is the case especially when the object of these verbs is a neuter adjective or pronoun used substantively. *Recordor* is more generally construed with the accusative than with the genitive.

298. The verb *miseror* (*miseresco*), I pity, and the impersonal verbs *miseret* (*miserescit*, *miseretur*), *piget*, *poenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, *pertaesum est*, are accompanied by the genitive of the thing exciting the feelings expressed by these verbs, and the impersonal verbs govern the accusative of the person in whom the feelings exist—as

miseror (miseresco or miseret me), }
amici mei,

I pity my friend.

poenitet me consilii,

I repent of my plan.

pudet me negligentiae meae,

I am ashamed of my carelessness.

pudet hunc hominem insolentiae,

this man is ashamed of his insolence.

299. Verbs of charging, accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing with which one is charged, and of which he is accused, convicted, acquitted, &c.

Such verbs are *accuso*, *incuso*, *insimulo*, *arcesso* (I summon before a court of justice); *postulo*, *ago cum aliquo* (I begin a lawsuit with a person); *arguo*, *coarguo*, *convincio*, *damno*, *condemno*, *absolvo*; e. g., *accusavit Titum furti*, he accused Titus of theft; *damnatus est repetundarum*, he was found guilty of extortion; *proditionis absolvit duces*, he acquitted the general of treachery.

300. When the price or value of a thing is stated in a general way, it is always expressed by the genitives *magni, permagni, tanti, tantidem, quanti, quantivis, quanticunque, pluris, plurimi, maximi, parvi, minoris, minimi*. This is the case especially with verbs of estimating and valuing—such as *duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*—as

<i>domum tanti ducit quanti ducenda est,</i>	he values the house at as much as it should be valued.
<i>sapiens voluptatem non tanti facit quanti virtutem,</i>	a wise man values pleasure not so much as virtue.

Verbs of selling and purchasing, however, are joined with the ablatives *magno, parvo, minimo, nihilo, nonnihilo*.

The verb *aestimo* may be joined either with the genitive or the ablative—as *magni* or *magno virtutem aestimo*, I value virtue highly.

301. The impersonal verbs *interest* and *rēfert* (it is of importance, or interest to) are joined with the genitive of the person to whom anything is of interest or importance; but when the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, the Latins use the possessive forms *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*—as

<i>patris interest</i> or <i>rēfert,</i>	it is of interest to the father.
<i>mea interest</i> or <i>rēfert,</i>	it is of interest to me.

As a possessive pronoun is the representative of a noun in the genitive, it frequently occurs that a substantive standing in apposition to the person implied in the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive—as *mea scripta timentis*, my writings who (I) fear—that is, the writings of me who fear; *mea unius opera respublica salva est*, through my exertion alone the republic is safe.

Sometimes the genitive of the personal pronoun is used instead of a possessive pronoun. This is the case chiefly with substantives containing the meaning of an active verb, so that the genitive of the personal pronoun is an objective genitive—as *accusator tui* for *accusator tuus*, your accuser (the man who accuses you.) Sometimes, however, there is a difference of meaning—as *imago mea*, my image, or the image belonging to me; but *imago mei*, an image of me, or a portrait of me.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.

302. The ablative, which is peculiar to the Latin language, expresses a variety of relations necessary to define and modify the predicate—that is, those relations which in English are expressed by the prepositions *by, with, from, in, or at*. It is used sometimes with and sometimes without prepositions.

303. The ablative is used to denote the part of a person or thing, or the point to which the statement contained in the predicate is limited—as

*aeger est pedibus,
tu temporibus errasti,
claudus altero pede,*

he is suffering in his feet.
you were mistaken as to the times.
lame in one foot.

304. The ablative is used to express the means or instrument by which anything is done or brought about—as

*manu aliquem ducere,
securi aliquem percutere,*

to lead a person by the hand.
to strike one with an axe.

When a person is employed as the means or instrument through which anything is done, the ablative cannot be used; but instead of it must be used the preposition *per* with the accusative—as *litteras tibi misi per servum*, I sent you the letter by a slave.

305. The ablative denotes the moving cause by which, or through the influence of which, anything is done—as

*ardere studio,
exsultare gaudio,*

to burn with zeal.
to exult with delight.

The ablatives *causa* and *gratia* (for the sake of, on account of) are in reality ablatives of cause, and are joined with a genitive or a possessive pronoun. When joined with a genitive, they usually stand after it—as *patris causa* or *gratia*, on the father's account; *mea causa*, on my account.

306. A substantive accompanied by an adjective, a pronoun, or a participle, is put in the ablative to express the manner or concomitant circumstance of the predicate—as

*summa aequitate rempublicam constituit,
deos pura et incorrupta mente venerari debemus,*

he settled the affairs of the republic with the greatest fairness.
we must worship the gods with a pure and sincere mind.

307. Substantives denoting manner—such as *modus*, *mos*, *ratio*, *ritus*, and *consuetudo*—are used in the ablative without being accompanied by an adjective, participle, or pronoun—as

*latronis modo,
more majorum,*

in the manner of a highwayman.
according to the custom of our forefathers.

Sometimes, however, the Latins use the preposition *cum* to express a concomitant circumstance, when this circumstance is something external, and is regarded as quite distinct from the idea contained in the predicate—as *magno cum studio aderat*, he was present with great zeal (that is, and displayed great zeal.)

When the substantive used to express a concomitant circumstance or manner is not accompanied by an adjective, participle, or pronoun, the preposition *cum* must be used—as *cum cura aliquid facere*, to do a thing with care.

308. With verbs of buying, selling, estimating, and the like,

the price or value, if stated by a distinct sum or amount, is expressed in the ablative—as

emere aliquid denario, to purchase a thing for a denarius.
orationem vendidit viginti talentis, he sold a speech for twenty talents.

309. The ablative is used with verbs denoting plenty, abundance, filling, conferring on, or providing with—as

affluere divitiis, to abound in wealth.
manare cruore, to drip with blood.

Verbs of this kind are such as—*abundo, redundo, affluo, scaleo, compleo, expleo, impleo, refectio, cumulo, stipo, instruo, afficio, imbuo, conspergo, dignor.*

310. Verbs, both transitive and intransitive, which denote want or deprivation, are accompanied by an ablative of the thing of which any one is in want or is deprived. Such verbs are—*careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco; orbo, privo, spolio, fraudo, nudo*—as

carere consuetudine amicorum, to be without the intercourse of friends.
egere auxilio, to be in want of assistance.

311. The ablative is joined with verbs of abstaining, renouncing, freeing, delivering, and excluding—such as *abstineo, solvo, exonero, excludo*—as

abstineo maledictis, I abstain from calumny.
liberare hominem catenis, to free a man from chains.

Verbs of abstaining, preventing, and excluding, however, often take the preposition *a* or *ab*—as *abstinere a vitiis*, to abstain from vices; *milites a pugna prohibuit*, he kept his soldiers from fighting. But the preposition must always be used when the ablative is the name of a person—as *arcere hostes a civibus*, to keep the enemies away from the citizens.

Verbs denoting a forcible removal of one from a place may be construed with the ablative alone, to denote the place from which; but it is more common to use the prepositions *ab, ex, or de*—as *movere or pellere aliquem loco*, to remove or expel a person from a place. In like manner the ablative alone is sometimes used with the words *cedo, excedo, and decedo*—as *decedere Italia* or *ex Italia*.

312. The verbs *gaudeo, laetor, glorior, delector, doleo, maereo, fido, and confido*, are followed by the ablative to denote the thing at which you rejoice or grieve, and in which you trust—as

gaudeo tua felicitate, I rejoice at your happiness.
doleo patris morte, I grieve at the death of my father.

The ablative in these cases is in reality the ablative of the **moving** cause.

313. The verbs *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *perfruor*, *fungor*, *defungor*, *perfungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, have their object in the ablative—as

carne utuntur,
fruor suavi otio,
hostes urbe potiti sunt,

they use meat.
I enjoy delightful ease.
the enemy took possession of the city.

Potior is construed also with the genitive, especially in the expression *rerum potiri*, to occupy the highest power in the state, where the ablative is never used. *Pascor* (I feed or graze) is joined both with the ablative and the accusative.

314. The expression *opus est* (there is need, it is necessary) is either treated as an impersonal verb, and then takes the thing of which there is need in the ablative; or *opus* is treated as an indeclinable adjective, and then the thing which is needed is expressed by the nominative. The person to whom anything is needful is expressed in each case by the dative—as

praesidio opus est,
exempla nobis opus sunt,

there is need of a garrison.
we need examples.

315. Adjectives denoting plenty, abundance, want of, and freedom from, govern the ablative—as

onustus praeda,
dives agris,
dignus laude,

laden with booty.
rich in landed possessions.
worthy of praise.

Such adjectives are—*praeditus*, *onustus*, *plenus*, *fertilis*, *dives*; *inanis*, *orbis*, *vacuus*, *liber*, *immunis*, *purus*, *alienus*; also *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *anxius*, *laetus*, *maestus*, *superbus*, *fretus*, and others of a similar meaning.

The adjectives *plenus*, *fertilis*, *dives*, and *inanis*, are also construed with the genitive, and *plenus* even more commonly than with the ablative—as *Gallia plena bonorum civium*. The participles *refertus* and *completus* likewise are often joined with the genitive when that of which anything is full are human beings—as *carcer plenus sceleratorum*; *urbs referta mercatorum*.

The word *macte* is used, either alone or in conjunction with an imperative of *sum* (*este*, *esto*), with the ablative of the thing for which we congratulate a person—as *macte virtute*, or *macte virtute esto*, I congratulate you on account of your valour.

316. Participles denoting origin or birth—such as *natus*, *ortus*, *genitus*, *satus*, *editus*—are joined with the ablative denoting the parents of whom, or the station in which, a person is born—as

nobili patre natus,
humili genere natus,

born of a noble father.
born of a humble family.

317. With comparatives the ablative denotes the amount of difference existing between two things compared—as

Romani duobus millibus plures erant there were two thousand more
quam Sabini, Romans than Sabines.
uno digito plus habere, to have one finger more.

The ablative, with the adverbs *ante* and *post*, likewise denotes how much one thing is earlier or later than another—as *tribus annis ante*, three years before or earlier; *decem annis post*, ten years after or later.

318. The ablative is often used with comparatives to denote the person or thing surpassed by another, which is commonly expressed by *quam*—as

filia matre pulchrior—that is, *filia* a daughter more beautiful than
pulchrior quam mater, her mother.
major fuit Scipione—that is, *quam* } he was greater than Scipio.
Scipio,

This mode of speaking, however, can be used only when the things compared with each other are either in the nominative or accusative.

319. The ablative of a substantive joined with an adjective, participle, or pronoun, is frequently used, both with and without the verb *sum*, to describe the nature or quality of anything—as

Agesilaus fuit corpore exiguo, Agesilaus was a man of a small
body.
orator summo ingenio, an orator of the highest genius.
flumen difficili transitu, a river difficult to cross.

Neither the genitive nor the ablative of quality can be used, unless the substantive is accompanied by an adjective, participle, or pronoun; 'a man of genius,' therefore, cannot be rendered either by *homo ingenii* or by *homo ingenio*, but must be changed into *homo ingeniosus*. (Comp. No. 294.)

320. The relations of place *where?* and *whence?* are generally expressed in Latin by the prepositions *in*, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*; but there are many cases in which these relations are expressed by the mere ablative without any preposition.

Place *where?* is expressed by the ablative alone in the case of the word *locus*, when accompanied by an adjective or pronoun; also in the expressions: *dextrā* (on the right-hand side), *laevā* (on the left-hand side), *terrā marique* (by land and by sea), and sometimes *medio* (in the midst or middle), and *numero* (in the place of); e.g., *hoc loco*, in this place; *illo loco*, in that place; *aequo loco*, in a favourable place; *medio aedium*, in the centre of the house.

The ablative of place *where?* without a preposition is very frequently used when a substantive denoting place is accompanied by the adjective *totus* or *omnis*, and when the meaning is 'throughout a

place'—as *tota Italia*, in all Italy or throughout Italy. The preposition *in*, however, may be added when the idea of 'throughout' is not to be emphatically stated—as *in tota Sicilia*, in all Sicily.

Place whence? is expressed by the ablative alone in the case of names of towns and small islands—as *Roma proficisci*, to set out from Rome; *Delo Rhodum navigare*, to sail from Delos to Rhodes.

In the same manner are used *domo*, from home; *rure*, from the country; and sometimes *humo*, from the ground.

321. The ablative of words denoting time is used to express the time when, at which, or within which anything happens—*as*

<i>tertio anno bellum confecit,</i>	in the third year he concluded the war.
<i>hoc die,</i>	on this day.

So also, *hieme*, in winter; *aestate*, in summer; *vere*, in the spring; *nocte*, at or by night; *luce*, by daylight, or in daytime.

Some substantives not denoting time may nevertheless be used in the ablative to express the time at which, or the circumstances under which, anything happens—as *adventu Caesaris*, on the arrival of Caesar; *bello Punico primo*, at the time of the first Punic war.

322. Any substantive (or personal pronoun) accompanied by an adjective, participle, or another substantive standing in apposition, may be put in the ablative to describe the time or circumstances under which anything happens. This ablative, usually called the ablative absolute, may always be resolved into a distinct clause, and may therefore be defined as a clause put in the ablative to express time and circumstances; as

<i>hoc factum est rege vivo,</i>	this was done while the king was alive.
<i>hae res gestae sunt rege duce,</i>	these things were done under the guidance of the king.
<i>urbem cepit me adjuvante, or me adju tore,</i>	he took the city with my assistance.

Such an ablative absolute may either qualify a particular word (usually the predicate) or an entire clause; but the subject of a clause expressed by the ablative absolute must always be different from that of the leading clause. Compare No. 379.

323. The following prepositions always govern the ablative:—*a, ab (abs), absque, clam, coram, palam, cum, de, ex or e, prae, pro, sine, tenus.*

Respecting *in, sub, subter*, and *super*, see No. 275. The verbs *pono, loco, colloco, statuo, constituo*, and *consido*, although they express motion, are generally construed with *in* and the ablative.

USE OF THE VOCATIVE CASE.

324. The vocative is used to address a person, and is inserted in clauses without affecting their construction.

The vocative, like the nominative, is not governed by any other word. A vocative, however, may consist of a word which, when qualified by others, exercises its influence upon them as a word, but as a vocative it exercises none; e. g., *vos, o amici!* you, my friends! *primū dicte mihi, summā dicende camenā, Maecenas!* Maecenas, praised by me in my first, and to be praised in my last poem!

PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF ADJECTIVES.

325. An adjective is used in Latin not merely as a simple attribute and predicate, but frequently stands in apposition to a substantive or pronoun, and then expresses the condition in which a person or thing is during an action, where we generally use adverbs or adverbial combinations of words—as

<i>multi eos, quos vivos coluerunt, mortuos contumelia afficiunt,</i>	many treat persons after their death (<i>mortuos</i>) with contumely, whom during their lifetime (<i>vivos</i>) they honoured.
<i>naturā ipsā de immortalitate animorum tacitū judicat,</i>	nature herself silently (<i>tacitū</i>) expresses her opinion of the immortality of the soul.

This is the case especially with adjectives denoting order (ordinal numerals) or succession—as *Hispania postrema perdomita est*, Spain was subdued last, or was the last country that was subdued.

326. Adjectives (and pronouns) are frequently used as substantives to denote persons or things of a certain kind or class.

When *persons* of a certain class are to be indicated, the masculine plural of an adjective is used—as *boni*, the good; *sapientes*, the wise; *omnes fortes*, all brave men. Sometimes the word *homines* is added.

When *things* of a certain class or kind are to be designated, the Latins use the neuter plural of an adjective, though they may also use the substantive *res* in the same way as is done in English—as *bona*, *bonae res*, good things or property; *mala*, bad things or evils.

The neuter singular of an adjective is used when an individual thing is to be indicated—as *bonum*, a good thing; *malum*, an evil or a bad thing; and when the abstract idea is to be expressed—as *verum*, the truth; *justum*, justice.

Some adjectives have so completely acquired the meaning of substantives, that they are almost invariably used as such—as *amicus*, a male friend; *amica*, a female friend.

Some adjectives are used as substantives with an ellipsis of some

substantive which determines the gender—as *patria* (*terra*, *urbs* or *civitas*), native country or city; *fera* (*bestia*), a wild beast; *canis* (*capilli*), gray hair.

327. The comparative of both adjectives and adverbs is frequently used to denote a higher degree than usual, or than should be, where we generally employ the word ‘rather’—as

senectus est naturā loquacior,

old age is naturally rather loquacious.

liberius vivebat,

he lived too freely (which, however, may also be expressed by *nimis libere*.)

328. The superlative often does not indicate absolutely the highest degree of a quality, but only a very high degree—that is, the highest degree in comparison with some, but not with all. In this case we may render the Latin superlative into English either by ‘very’ with the positive, or with the positive alone—as

*Sulla, qui est vir fortissimus et clarissimus,
optime valeo,*

Sulla, who is a very brave and illustrious man.
I am very well.

329. A considerable number of superlatives which denote order, succession, time, and place, are often joined to a substantive, although in reality they qualify only a part of the thing expressed by the substantive. Such superlatives are *primus*, *postremus*, *ultimus*, *novissimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *intimus*, *extremus*, and *medius*—as

<i>primo vere</i> —that is, <i>prima parte</i>	}	at the beginning of spring.
<i>veris,</i>		
<i>in summo monte</i> —that is, <i>in summa</i>	}	on the top of a mountain.
<i>parte montis,</i>		

In like manner are also used *medius*, *reliquus*, and *cetera*—as *reliqua Graecia*, the remaining part of Greece; *cetera multitudo*, the other part of the multitude; *in media via*, in the middle of the road.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF CLAUSES AND THEIR RELATIONS TO ONE ANOTHER.

330. A clause is either an independent or leading clause, or it is a subordinate or explanatory one.

331. An independent clause simply states a fact by itself, in the form of an assertion or of a question—as

*miles dormit,
fratremne vidisti?*

the soldier sleeps.
have you seen the brother?

332. A subordinate sentence is usually so constructed that it cannot stand by itself, and can be understood only when viewed in connection with another—as

miles dormit, ut vires reficiat, the soldier sleeps, that he may restore his strength.

Sometimes an independent clause also remains unintelligible unless an accessory clause be added—as *miles fortior est quam expectaveram*, the soldier is braver than I had anticipated, where *miles fortior est* is not complete without the accessory clause.

Two clauses thus combined form a compound sentence, and always convey a distinct meaning.

333. Subordinate clauses are connected with the leading clause by conjunctions, relative pronouns, or by interrogative particles—as

te non laudo, quoniam mihi non ob- I do not praise you, because you
temperasti, did not obey me.
omnes qui adfuerunt hoc sciunt, all who were present know it.
ex me quaesivit unde haec scirem, he asked me whence I knew this.

Subordinate clauses are often expressed in a peculiar way by the construction of the accusative with the infinitive—as *scio eum esse bonum hominem*, I know him to be a good man, or I know that he is a good man.

334. Two or more clauses may be joined together in such a manner by copulative or adversative conjunctions, that none of them is subordinate to another. Such clauses are termed co-ordinate. Co-ordinate clauses may be all leading or all subordinate clauses of the same sentence—as

haec res mihi valde placet, et pater this thing pleases me very much,
am vehementer probat, and my father greatly approves of it.
mihi haec res placet, sed pater eam I am pleased with this thing, but
improbat, my father disapproves of it.
neque cur tu hoc consilium tam vehe- I do not understand either why
menter probes, neque cur pater you so greatly approve of this
tantopere improbet, intelligo, plan, or why your father so much disapproves of it.

1. In subordinate or explanatory clauses introduced by a relative pronoun, the substantive to which the pronoun refers is often drawn into the relative clause, so that the demonstrative clause follows the relative one—as *quae cupiditates a natura profisciscuntur, facile explentur sine injuria*—that is, *vae cupiditates, quae a natura*, &c. those desires which proceed from nature are easily satisfied without injury.
2. When a substantive is followed by another substantive which stands in apposition to it, and is explained by a relative clause, the apposition is almost invariably drawn into the relative clause—as *frumen-*

tum, quae sola alimenta ex insperato fortuna dedit, ab ore rapitur, the corn, the only food which fortune unexpectedly afforded, is torn away from the mouth.

3. Relative clauses do not always contain a mere explanation, but very often stand to the leading clause in a relation which is commonly expressed by conjunctions denoting intention, cause, and the like. Such clauses require to be expressed in Latin by the subjunctive mood.

MOODS IN GENERAL.

335. The sentiment contained in a sentence is expressed in the form of a simple statement or question in the indicative mood; or in the form of a wish or command of the speaker in the imperative mood; or as a mere conception of the mind in the subjunctive mood—as

*pater me in Graeciam misit,
confer te in Graeciam,
in Graeciam profectus est, ut philo-
sophos audiret,*

my father sent me into Greece.
remove thyself into Greece.
he went into Greece that he might
hear the philosophers.

336. Co-ordinate clauses, whether they be leading or subordinate, usually have the same mood, though the verbs may be in different tenses.

There are cases in which even co-ordinate sentences are conceived in such a way that they require different moods—as *pugiles ingemiscunt non quod doleant, sed quia omne corpus intenditur*, boxers sigh, not because (as one might imagine) they feel pain, but because every part of their body is on the stretch (a fact.)

INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

337. The indicative mood is used to make a simple statement of a fact, either affirmatively or negatively, and to put a direct question—that is, in such a way that the clause containing the question is not in a relation dependent or subordinate upon any other clause—as

*hunc librum legi,
illum librum non legam,
quando ad me venies?
num pater veniet?
quod non ex urbe profectus es, mihi
pergratum est,*

I have read this book.
that book I shall not read.
when will you come to me?
will the father come?
the fact that you have not gone
out of town is very agreeable to
me.

The indicative is used in Latin in conditional clauses (beginning

with *si*, *nisi*, *etiamsi*, *etsi*, and *sive*), when it is to be intimated that the supposition is really true, so that *si* is equivalent to *quum* (as or since); or when, for the sake of argument, we assume that the supposition is true; or, when negatively expressed, it is not true—as *si nihil aliud fecerunt, satis praeiis habent*, if (or as) they have done nothing else, they are sufficiently rewarded.

Certain tenses of the indicative are used in Latin where we should expect the subjunctive, especially in the case of the verbs *oportet*, *necesse est*, *debeo*, *convenit*, *possum*, *licet*, and in the expressions *par*, *fas*, *aequum*, *justum*, *consentaneum*, *satis*, *sati*, *sati*, *melius*, *aequius est*. The imperfect indicative of these verbs and expressions is used when we wish to express that at some past time something should have been done, but at the same time intimate that the time for doing it is not yet passed, or that it is not yet too late; e. g., *ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, 'you ought to have been put to death long ago;' suggesting that it is not too late yet, and that it may still be done. The perfect and pluperfect indicative of the same expressions are used when we wish to intimate that something ought to have been done, but that the time for it is now passed, and that it is too late—as *Volumnia debuit in te officiosior esse*, 'Volumnia ought to have been more attentive to you;' suggesting that the time is now past, and that it is too late to make good her neglect. So also *longe utilius fuit*, it would have been far more useful.

The indicative is commonly used (if there be no special reason for the subjunctive) after doubled relatives, and those having the suffix *cunque*—as *quisquis*, *quotquot*, *quicunque*, *quantuscunque*, *utut*, *utecunque*; e. g., *quidquid id est*, whatever this may be.

The tenses of the indicative in Latin answer, with few exceptions, to the same tenses in English. Any action or condition is either simply stated as past, present, or future, or as in relation to another action in reference to which it is past, present, or future.

In this manner we have three absolute tenses (present, perfect, and future), and three relative tenses (imperfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.)

In animated narrative, past events are frequently related by the present tense, as if they were going on before our eyes. This present is termed the historic present.

338. The Latin *perfect* has two distinct meanings—

1. It is used, like the past tense in English, to relate the events of the past—as *Caesar Galliam subegit*, Caesar subdued Gaul; *illo anno multae res memorabiles acciderunt*, many memorable events occurred in that year. The perfect in this sense is called the historic perfect, as it is the tense by which past or historical events are related as facts.
2. It is used to describe an action as completed and past, but with reference to present time, and thus completely answers to the English perfect—as *pater jam venit*, the father has already come. The perfect in this sense may be termed the present perfect.

The conjunctions *postquam*, *posteaquam* (after); *ubi*, *ut* (when); *simul*, *simulatque*, *ut primum*, and *quum primum* (as soon as), are followed in Latin by the perfect, when it is to be expressed that two actions follow one another in immediate succession—as *postquam victoria parata est, hostes refugerunt*, after the victory had been gained, the enemy fled.

339. The *imperfect* describes a past action as in progress and not complete, and is therefore used in descriptions of things which in past time were in a certain condition, or of past events which are represented as going on. The imperfect is also used to relate events which usually or repeatedly occurred in past time—as

<i>etiam tum Athenae gloriā litterarum et artium florebant,</i>	even at that time Athens was flourishing for its reputation in literature and the arts.
<i>quum Verres ad aliquod oppidum venerat, eādem lecticā usque in cubiculum deferabatur,</i>	whenever Verres came to any town, he was (always) carried in the same lectica to his sleep- ing apartment.

340. The *pluperfect* states an action of past time which was completed before another action, at present likewise completed, began—as

<i>dixerat iudex, quum puer nuntiavit,</i>	the judge had spoken when the boy gave information.
--	--

341. The *future* denotes an action or condition which is to take place at a future time unspecified, or at a particular moment in future time—as

<i>hostes venient,</i>	the enemies will come.
------------------------	------------------------

342. The *future perfect* describes a future act as completed at a certain future time—as

<i>quum tu haec leges, ego illum for- tasse convenero,</i>	when you (will) read this, I shall perhaps have spoken with him.
--	---

The tenses of the periphrastic conjugation are, on the whole, used in the same way as those of the ordinary conjugation; but the action expressed by the participle future is in all tenses a future one—as *scripturus sum, scripturus eram, scripturus ero, scripturus fui, scripturus fueram, scripturus fuero*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

343. A verb in the subjunctive expresses an action or condition as a mere conception of the mind, in the form of a wish, a possibility, an intention, a supposition, a concession, and the like, so that the speaker does not treat it as a fact; as

<i>scribo ut scias, quae si ita sint, facile aliquis dicat,</i>	I write that you may know. if these things be so. a person may easily say.
---	--

344. The subjunctive is used both in leading and in subordinate clauses, though more especially in the latter. In leading clauses it is of a fourfold nature—expressing a supposition or hypothesis (*hypothetical clauses*), a possibility (when it is termed the *potential mood*), a wish or desire (the *optative mood*), and a concession (*concessive mood*.)

Every *hypothetical sentence* consists of two clauses—the one, which states the condition or supposition (beginning with *si, nisi, ni, si non, etiamsi, tametsi*), is called the *protasis*; and the other, which contains the conclusion or inference, is called the *apodosis*. The *protasis* is sometimes not expressed, being either implied in something which precedes, or supplied by the mind of the hearer or reader—*illo tempore aliter sensisses*, ‘at that time you would have thought differently’—namely, ‘if you had looked at the matter,’ or ‘if you had lived.’

345. The present subjunctive is used both in the *protasis* and *apodosis*, to denote that the supposition is possible, and may be true; and accordingly, that the *apodosis* is also possible—as

me dies deficiat, si hoc nunc dicere the day would not suffice for me,
velim, if I wished to say this now.

346. The imperfect subjunctive is used in the *protasis* and *apodosis*, to denote that the supposition is not or cannot be true, and that accordingly the inference also is not true. The time expressed in such sentences is the present—as

si pecuniam haberem, ad te venire, if I (now) had money I should
come to you; implying that I
have no money, and accordingly
cannot come to you.

347. The pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, if the supposition as well as the inference is not true, and belongs to past time—as

si pecuniam habuissem, ad te venissem, if I had had money (which was
not the case), I should have
come to you (which, under the
circumstances, was a matter of
impossibility.)

Sometimes the imperfect and pluperfect are united in the same sentence—as *si sibi cavere potuisset, viveret*, if he had been able to be on his guard, he would (now) be living.

348. The subjunctive, as a *potential mood*, is used—

1. To express that which does not really exist, but may or might exist, and is conceived as possible. The subject of such clauses is usually an indefinite or an interrogative pronoun—as *dicat aliquis* or

quispiam, some one may say; *dixerit aliquis*, some one might say; *quis credat?* who would believe it?

Things which are possible at the present time are expressed by the present or the perfect subjunctive, while a past possibility is expressed by the imperfect—as *quis eum redargueret?* who would have refuted him?

2. The potential subjunctive is also used with definite subjects for the purpose of expressing an opinion in a modest manner, and this occurs most frequently in the first person of the perfect when the speaker expresses his own opinion with a certain degree of modesty or hesitation—as *haud facile dixerim*, I would not easily say.
3. The potential subjunctive is used in doubtful questions containing a negative sense—as *quid faciam?* what shall I do? equivalent to, 'I do not know what I shall do.' In like manner the potential subjunctive is used in questions expressive of disapproval—as *hos cives patria desideret?* is the country to long for such citizens? the implied answer being 'assuredly not.'

349. The subjunctive, as an *optative mood*, is used to express a wish or desire—as

valeas,
valeant cives,
beati sint,

fare well.
may my fellow-citizens fare well.
may they be happy.

350. The subjunctive (a *concessive mood*), is used to express a concession or admission. It usually denotes that what is conceded is not true, or at least is undecided, but that it is granted for the sake of argument—as

<i>sint haec falsa, invidiosa certe non sunt,</i>	granting that these things are false, invidious they certainly are not.
<i>sit sane dolor gravis, malum non est,</i>	granting that (or although) pain is severe, it is not an evil.

The conjunction *ut* (in the sense of 'granting that') is often added to a concessive subjunctive—as *ut sit infelix*, granting that he is unhappy; and in negative clauses *ne* must be added—as *ne sint in senectute vires*, granting that there is no strength in old age.

351. All dependent or subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunctions *ut* (that, in order that, so that, although), *ne* or *ut ne* (that not, or in order that not), *ut non* (so that not), *quin* (that not), *quominus* (that not), and *quo* (in the sense of *ut eo*, in order that thereby), have the verb in the subjunctive—as

<i>sol efficit, ut omnia floeant,</i>	the sun makes (that) all things flourish.
<i>virtutem colere debetis, ut beati esse possitis,</i>	you must cultivate virtue, that (in order that) you may be able to be happy.
<i>precor, ne me deseras,</i>	I pray that you may not desert me.

352. All questions expressed in the form of a subordinate clause—that is, indirect questions—have the verb in the subjunctive—as

quaero, quid facturus sis,
quaesivi, quid faceret,

I ask what you are going to do.
I asked what he was doing.

353. Subordinate sentences introduced by the conjunctions *quod, quia, quoniam, quando* (because, since), usually have the verb in the indicative when the writer or speaker states his own view of a case; but the subjunctive must be used when he states the reason of another person, intimating that he merely quotes the opinion of another, without assenting to it or dissenting from it—as

Aristides expulsus est patriā, quod
praelet modum justus esset,

Aristides was expelled from his country, because (it was alleged that) he was too just.

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrum-
peret juventutem et novas super-
stitiones introduceret,

Socrates was accused, because (as his enemies said) he corrupted the young, and introduced new superstitions.

354. The conjunction *quum* or *cum*, when it denotes cause, and signifies ‘as’ or ‘since,’ is always construed with the subjunctive—as

cum vita brevis sit, summa diligentia
adhibenda est, ut ea bene utamur,

as life is short, we must take the greatest care to make good use of it.

In historical narrative, where a preceding event may be looked upon as the cause of a subsequent one, *quum* is always construed with the subjunctive, even when we translate it by ‘when,’ as if it denoted time—as *Epaminondas quum vicisset Lacedaemonios, atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, quaesivit salvasne esset clypeus*. If, on the other hand, *quum* expresses purely time, and is equivalent to *tum quum* (then or at the time when), it is construed with the indicative—as *qui injuriam non propulsat, quum* (that is, *tum quum*) *potest, injuste facit*, he who does not repel an injury when he can, acts wrong.

355. The conjunctions *dum, donec, and quoad*, in the sense of ‘as long as,’ are construed with the indicative. In the sense of ‘until’ they take the indicative, if the event is conceived as one that really happened or happens; but if the event is conceived as merely possible, and if an intention or purpose is implied, they have the verb in the subjunctive—as

non desinam, donec perfecero,

I shall not cease until I have accomplished it.

Milo adfuit, quoad senatus dimissus
est,

Milo was present until the senate broke up.

iratis subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos im-
petum conantur facere, dum se ipsi
colligant,

we must withdraw from angry persons those on whom they attempt an attack, until they recover themselves.

356. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are joined with the indicative when it is simply stated that one action precedes another in time; the subjunctive, on the other hand, is used when the event does not or did not actually happen before the other—as

<i>priusquam de adventu meo audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexi,</i>	I reached Macedonia before they could hear of my arrival.
<i>nunquam eris dives, antequam tibi ex tuis possessionibus tantum refi- ciatur, ut eo legionem tueri possis,</i>	you will not be rich until (before) you gain so much from your possessions that you can keep a legion with it.

357. The concessive conjunctions *quamvis* (however much), and *licet* (although), are construed with the subjunctive, like *quantumvis* and *quamlibet*, while *quamquam* (although) is joined with the indicative—as

<i>quamvis neges, tamen tibi credere nullo modo possum,</i>	however much you may deny, still I cannot believe you in anyway.
<i>licet mihi invidus sit, tamen eum non persequar,</i>	although he is hateful to me, still I will not persecute him.

358. The conjunctions *quasi*, *velut si*, *tamquam si* (sometimes *tamquam*, *sicut*, or poetically *ceu* alone), *perinde ac si*, *aeque ac si*, *non secus ac si*, are joined with the subjunctive, as they introduce a clause which is only a conception of the mind—as

<i>sic cogitandum est, tamquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit,</i>	our thoughts must be such, as if any one could look into our innermost heart.
<i>quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit?</i>	why do I make use of these wit- nesses, as if the matter were doubtful or obscure?

359. Relative clauses which simply add an explanation of some word or circumstance contained in the leading clause, have the verb in the indicative. But when a relative clause, besides containing a simple explanation, implies at the same time the idea of intention, purpose, result or consequence, cause, and such like, the subjunctive is employed. In all these cases the relative involves the idea of *ut* (in order that, so that) or *quum* (as, since), which accounts for its requiring the subjunctive.

360. The following special cases render this plain—

1. The subjunctive is used in a relative clause when it expresses the intention or purpose of the action contained in the leading clause. In this case the relative is equivalent to *ut is*, 'in order that he;' e.g., *legatos Romam misit, qui (ut ii) auxilium a senatu peterent*, he sent deputies to Rome, who should ask the Roman senate for succour.
2. After the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and sometimes also *idoneus*, the relative is used with the subjunctive, if that of which a person is worthy or unworthy, or for which anything is fit, is expressed by a verb—as *dignus* or *indignus est qui laudetur*, he is

worthy or unworthy of being praised; *non satis idoneus videtur, cui tantum negotium committatur*, he does not seem quite fit to be intrusted with so important a business.

3. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which serve to complete the idea of a certain quality, and to express its effect; in such cases the relative is equivalent to *talis ut*, 'such that,' and the demonstratives *talis, tantus, hic, ille, is, ejusmodi, hujusmodi, or tum*, sometimes actually precede the relative, but sometimes they are understood; e. g., *innocentia est affectio talis animi, quae (ut) noceat nemini*, harmlessness is that (or such a) state of mind which hurts no one.
4. After such general and indefinite expressions as *sunt* (there are persons), *inveniuntur, reperiuntur* (there are found men), *non desunt* (there are not wanting persons), *exstitit, exstiterunt, exortus est, habeo, est (ubi), nemo est, nihil est*, and the like, the relative may be joined with the indicative as well as with the subjunctive. The latter is used when the relative implies a quality—as *sunt, qui discessum animi a corpore pulent esse mortem*, there are persons (of such a kind, so stupid or so wise) who believe that death is the separation of the soul from the body. When the relative is joined with the indicative, a simple fact is stated without any intimation of quality, so that *sunt quos juvat* is equivalent to *juvat quosdam*, some persons take a delight; *est ubi peccat*, equivalent to *interdum peccat*, he sometimes blunders.
5. The relative is followed by the verb in the subjunctive when it implies a supposition or condition, so that it involves the idea of *si*—as *nihil bonum est, quod hominem non meliorem faciat*, nothing is good unless it makes man better. In such a case, however, the writer, if he chooses, may use the indicative, employing the relative in its pure sense without suggesting any condition—as *nihil bonum est, quod hominem non meliorem facit*, nothing is good which does not make man better.
6. Relative clauses have the verb in the subjunctive when they introduce a reason for what is contained in the leading clause; in such cases the relative is almost equivalent to *quum* (as, since)—as *O, fortunate adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!* O, fortunate youth, who (since thou) hast found in Homer a herald of thy valour!
7. Relative clauses have the verb in the subjunctive when the sentiment which they introduce is to be characterised as belonging to another person, and not as the sentiment of the speaker himself—as *Socrates exsecrari eum solebat, qui primus utilitatem a jure sejunxisset*, Socrates used to curse the man (whoever he was) who had first severed that which is useful from that which is just.
8. In historical narrative the subjunctive is sometimes used in a relative clause when actions of repeated occurrence are spoken of—as *quemcunque lictor jussu consulisprehendisset*, whomsoever the lictor had seized by the command of the consul.

361. The subjunctive is used in all clauses introduced into a dependent clause either by a relative pronoun or a conjunction, provided they form an integral part of it—as

quod me admones, ut me integrum, your advice to keep myself unin-
quoad possim, servem, gratum est, injured, as far as I can, is accept-
 able.

By a dependent clause is meant one expressed by the **accusative** with the infinitive, or having its verb in the subjunctive. A **clause** forming an integral part of such a sentence is absolutely **necessary**, and without it the whole does not and cannot convey a **distinct** meaning.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

362. The imperative represents an action or condition in the form of a command, request, or admonition.

It has only two tenses—the present and the future: the former expresses a request or command in reference to present time, or without reference to any particular time; and the latter, a command or request that something is to be done in future, or when an occasion shall occur; and hence it is the appropriate form of expressing a command in laws, wills, contracts, or in writings composed in imitation of the style employed in such documents—as *vive felix!* live happily!—*subvenite misero mihi, ite obviam injuriae!* help me, wretched man, and resist the act of injustice!—*regio imperio duo sunt*, there shall be two men with kingly power; *servus meus liber esto*, my slave shall be free.

Instead of the imperative present, it is very common to use the subjunctive, and especially in the second person singular when an indefinite person is addressed—as *aut bibat, aut abeat*, let him drink, or go away; *injurias fugiendo relinquant*, escape from injuries by flight. When a definite person is addressed in the second person singular, it is more common to use the imperative than the subjunctive.

A negative command in legal phraseology is expressed by the future imperative with *ne*, and 'nor' is expressed by *neve*—as *nocturna sacrificia ne sunt*, there shall be no sacrifices at night.

Instead of the imperative present in a negative command, it is customary to use, in the third person, the subjunctive of the present or the future perfect; and in the second person in the active, the future perfect; and in the passive the perfect, or more rarely the present: the negative in these cases is likewise *ne*—as *puer telum ne habeat*, the boy shall not have a weapon; *hoc ne feceris*, do not do this.

A sentence which in direct speech is expressed by the imperative, becomes the subjunctive when the speech becomes indirect—as *hoc mihi dicant*, in indirect speech, stands for *hoc mihi dicite*, in direct speech.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

363. The infinitive expresses the action or condition implied in the verb, as an abstract generality.

364. The infinitive may be regarded as a verbal substantive, which, generally speaking, exists only in two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and differs from other substantives by its governing the case of a verb.

The infinitive, both in the active and passive, has only three tenses:

1. That commonly called the infinitive of the present, representing an action in progress, and therefore the infinitive not only of the present, but also of the past and the future—as *amare* and *amari*; 2. The infinitive of the perfect representing an action as completed, and serving as the infinitive both of the perfect and pluperfect—as *amavisse* and *amatum* (*am, um*) *esse*; 3. The infinitive of the future simply representing an action as yet to come, whatever may be the point of time from which it is viewed—as *amaturum esse* and *amatum iri*.

365. The subject of an infinitive is, with few exceptions, in the accusative.

366. As the infinitive has only two cases, the nominative and accusative, it may be used either as the subject of another verb, or as its object.

367. The infinitive is the subject (nominative) when an action is the thing of which something is predicated—as

patriam amare cujusvis est civis, to love one's country is the duty
of every citizen.

368. The infinitive stands as an object (accusative) of many verbs which express an incomplete idea, and require another verb to complete it—as

cupio legere librum, I want to read the book.

Verbs of this kind are those denoting will, power, custom, inclination, beginning, continuing, ceasing, neglecting, and others—as *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo, conor, nitor, contendo, tenio*.

369. A clause expressed by the accusative with the infinitive, is the subject of another verb when the whole of it is conceived as a single idea or noun of which something is predicated—as

victorem parcere victis aequum est, that the victor spare the van-
quished is generous.

Here the clause *victis victorem parcere* is the subject, and *aequum est* is the predicate.

370. A clause expressed by the accusative with the infinitive is the object of another verb, when the whole of it is conceived as a single idea or noun, governed by a transitive verb—as

doceo te loqui, I teach you to speak.
jussit me ad se venire, he ordered me to come to him.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

371. The gerund supplies the place of a verbal substantive in all cases except the nominative and vocative (the place of the nominative is supplied by the infinitive); but it differs from

ordinary substantives in governing its case as a verb, and in not being followed by the genitive of another substantive—as

studium obtemperandi legibus,
ad fruendum frugibus terrae,

the zeal to obey the laws.
for the purpose of enjoying the
fruits of the earth.

372. When the gerund is a transitive verb having its object in the accusative, as in *consilium condendi urbem*, the common practice is to change the accusative into the case of the gerund, and the gerund into the gerundive, making it agree with its noun—as

consilium condendae urbis,

the plan of founding a city.

As the gerund, as far as its meaning is concerned, is nothing but the oblique cases of the infinitive, and as the infinitive cannot in all cases be used as an ordinary substantive, the gerund also cannot be used in all cases like an ordinary substantive.

The accusative of the gerund is used only after prepositions, especially *ad* and *inter*, in the sense of 'during' or 'amid'—as *inter ludendum*, during the play.

373. The gerundive of transitive verbs is in form an adjective, and has a passive meaning signifying that something must be done; that is, it expresses necessity—as

vir haud contemnendus,
patria defendenda est,

a man not to be despised.
our country must be defended.

If the agent who must do anything, or by whom anything must be done, is added, it is always expressed by the dative—as *hoc mihi faciendum est*, I must do this, or this must be done by me.

SUPINE.

374. The supine is a verbal substantive of the fourth declension, and has only two cases—the accusative (in *um*) and the ablative (in *u*.) It differs from an ordinary substantive, inasmuch as it governs the case of its verb—as

legati venerunt res repetitum,

ambassadors came to reclaim their
property.

375. The supine in *um* has an active meaning, and is used after verbs of motion, to express the object of the motion—as

legati in castra venerunt questum
injurias,
Fabius Pictor Delphos ad oraculum
missus est sciscitatum, quibus pre-
cibus deos poscent placare,

deputies came into the camp to
complain of the acts of injustice.
Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi
to the oracle, to inquire by what
prayers they could propitiate
the gods.

376. The supine in *u* has a passive meaning, and is used with certain adjectives to denote that a quality is attributed to a subject with reference to the action expressed by the supine; e.g.,

<i>pleraque dictu quam re sunt facili- lora,</i>	most things are more easy to say than to do.
<i>honestum factu, turpe factu,</i>	honourable to do, disgraceful to do.

The words most commonly used with this supine are—*fas, nefas, opus, honestus, turpis, jucundus, facilis, difficilis, incredibilis, memorabilis, utilis, dignus, indignus.*

PARTICIPLES.

377. A participle is in form an adjective, but differs from other adjectives by the fact of its expressing time, and governing the case of the verb from which it is formed.

In the active there are two participles: the one, called the present participle, represents an action or condition in progress, and accordingly, if present actions are spoken of, it may be regarded as a present participle—as *accusat meicens me ad hostes transfugisse*, he accuses me, saying (present) that I deserted to the enemy; if past actions are spoken of, it may be termed the participle of the imperfect—as *accusavit meicens me ad hostes transfugisse*, he accused me, saying (for he said) that I had deserted to the enemy. The future participle represents an action or condition as intended or as to take place in future time—as *militēs adversus urbem profecturi per totam noctem in castris se tenebant*, the soldiers intending to march against the city kept themselves all night within the camp. The active voice has no participle for a completed action. The passive voice, if we except the gerundive, has only one participle, which expresses a completed action—as *injuria illata*, an injury which has been done.

378. A participle, when occurring in the same clause as the noun to which it refers, must agree with it in gender, number, and case, like an ordinary adjective—as

<i>risum saepe cupientes tenere nequimus,</i>	often we cannot suppress laughter though we wish it.
<i>Caesar victos hostes interfecit,</i>	Caesar put the conquered enemies to death.

379. If the time when, cause, manner, or any accompanying circumstance of an action is expressed by a subordinate clause having a subject different from that of the leading one, that clause is put in the ablative—that is, the subject is put in the ablative, and the verb, being changed into a participle, is made

to agree with the subject. A clause thus expressed is said to be in the ablative absolute (comp. No. 322)—as

<i>rege expulso consules creati sunt,</i>	after the king was expelled consuls were elected.
<i>hae res Tarquinio regnante gestae sunt,</i>	these things were done in the reign of Tarquinius.
<i>sole stante terra vertitur,</i>	the earth turns round while the sun is standing still.

THE END.